



HU000034409T2

(19) **HU**(11) Lajstromszám: **E 034 409**(13) **T2****MAGYARORSZÁG****Szellemi Tulajdon Nemzeti Hivatala**

EURÓPAI SZABADALOM SZÖVEGÉNEK FORDÍTÁSA

(21) Magyar ügyszám: **E 13 740184**(22) A bejelentés napja: **2013. 07. 15.**(51) Int. Cl.: **C07D217/26** (2006.01)

(96) Az európai bejelentés bejelentési száma:

EP 20130740184

(86) A nemzetközi (PCT) bejelentési szám:

PCT/US 13/050538

(97) Az európai bejelentés közzétételi adatai:

EP 2872487 A1 **2014. 01. 23.**

(87) A nemzetközi közzétételi szám:

WO 14014834

(97) Az európai szabadalom megadásának meghirdetési adatai:

EP 2872487 B1 **2017. 04. 26.**

(30) Elsőbbségi adatok:

201261672191 P **2012. 07. 16.** **US**

(73) Jogosult(ak):

Fibrogen, Inc., San Francisco, CA 94158 (US)

(72) Feltaláló(k):

THOMPSON, Michael D., San Francisco, California
94158 (US)
PARK, Jung Min, San Francisco, California 94158 (US)
AREND, Michael P., San Francisco, California 94158
(US)

(74) Képviselő:

Danubia Szabadalmi és Jogi Iroda Kft.,
Budapest

(54)

Eljárás izokinolin-vegyületek előállítására

Az európai szabadalom ellen, megadásának az Európai Szabadalmi Közlönyben való meghirdetésétől számított kilenc hónapon belül, felszólalást lehet benyújtani az Európai Szabadalmi Hivatalnál. (Európai Szabadalmi Egyezmény 99. cikk(1))

A fordítást a szabadalmas az 1995. évi XXXIII. törvény 84/H. §-a szerint nyújtotta be. A fordítás tartalmi helyességét a Szellemi Tulajdon Nemzeti Hivatala nem vizsgálta.

(19)



(11)

EP 2 872 487 B1

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT SPECIFICATION

(45) Date of publication and mention
of the grant of the patent:

26.04.2017 Bulletin 2017/17

(51) Int Cl.:

C07D 217/26 ^(2006.01)

(21) Application number: **13740184.0**

(86) International application number:

PCT/US2013/050538

(22) Date of filing: **15.07.2013**

(87) International publication number:

WO 2014/014834 (23.01.2014 Gazette 2014/04)

(54) **PROCESS FOR MAKING ISOQUINOLINE COMPOUNDS**

VERFAHREN ZUR HERSTELLUNG VON ISOCHINOLINVERBINDUNGEN

PROCÉDÉ DE FABRICATION DE COMPOSÉS ISOQUINOLÉINE

(84) Designated Contracting States:

**AL AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB
GR HR HU IE IS IT LI LT LU LV MC MK MT NL NO
PL PT RO RS SE SI SK SM TR**

Designated Extension States:

BA ME

(72) Inventors:

- **THOMPSON, Michael D.**
San Francisco, California 94158 (US)
- **PARK, Jung Min**
San Francisco, California 94158 (US)
- **AREND, Michael P.**
San Francisco, California 94158 (US)

(30) Priority: **16.07.2012 US 201261672191 P**

(74) Representative: **Carpmaels & Ransford LLP**

**One Southampton Row
London WC1B 5HA (GB)**

(43) Date of publication of application:

20.05.2015 Bulletin 2015/21

(60) Divisional application:

17155678.0

(56) References cited:

WO-A1-2013/013609 US-A1- 2004 254 215

(73) Proprietor: **Fibrogen, Inc.**

San Francisco, CA 94158 (US)

EP 2 872 487 B1

Note: Within nine months of the publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent in the European Patent Bulletin, any person may give notice to the European Patent Office of opposition to that patent, in accordance with the Implementing Regulations. Notice of opposition shall not be deemed to have been filed until the opposition fee has been paid. (Art. 99(1) European Patent Convention).

Description**CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION**

[0001] This application claims the benefit under 35 U.S.C. § 119(e) to U. S. Application Number 61/672,191, filed July 16, 2012.

BACKGROUND**Field**

[0002] The present invention relates to methods for making isoquinoline compounds and the intermediate compounds achieved thereby.

State of the Art

[0003] Isoquinoline compounds are known to be effective in the treatment and prevention of conditions and disorders associated with HIF, including anemia and tissue damage caused by ischemia and/or hypoxia (see, e.g., Robinson et al. (2008) *Gastroenterology* 134(1): 145-155; Rosenberger et al. (2008) *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 23(11):3472-3478). Specifically, the compounds and methods disclosed herein can be used as, or in the preparation of, isoquinoline compounds for inhibiting HIF hydroxylase activity, thereby increasing the stability and/or activity of hypoxia inducible factor (HIF), which can then be used to treat and prevent HIF-associated conditions and disorders.

[0004] To date, a number of synthetic routes for the preparation of substituted isoquinoline compounds have been published. In 1966, Caswell et al. (*Heterocycl Chem* 1966, (3), 328-332) reported the synthesis of 4-hydroxy-3-carbomethoxy-1(2H)-isoquinoline, and the 6- and 8-methoxy substituted derivatives thereof, via the Gabriel-Coleman rearrangement of phthalimidoacetate with sodium in methanol, preferably at high temperatures (105 °C) in a sealed reaction vessel. Whereas such methods did provide an excess of one regioisomer, the substitution was dictated by the electronic nature of the substituent, not the desire of the chemist.

[0005] In 1978, Suzuki et al. (*Synthesis* 1978 (6), 461-462) reported the synthesis of 4-hydroxy-3-carbomethoxy-1(2H)-isoquinoline via the acid catalyzed ring opening and subsequent intramolecular cyclization of 4-methoxycarbonyl-1,3-oxazole, which was prepared from phthalic anhydride and methyl isocyanoacetate. Suzuki et al. also reported the synthesis of the nitro substituted 4-hydroxy-3-carbomethoxy-1(2H)-isoquinoline, however, the methods disclosed therein provided a mixture of the 6- and 7-nitro isoquinoline compounds.

[0006] Weidmann et al. (U.S. Patent No. 6,093,730) reported the synthesis of various substituted isoquinoline-3-carboxamides via chromatographic separation of the 4-hydroxy-3-carbomethoxy-1(2H)-isoquinoline isomers provided by the Caswell et al. synthesis, followed by hydrolysis of the methyl ester, activation of the corresponding acid to the acid halide, and condensation with glycine methyl ester.

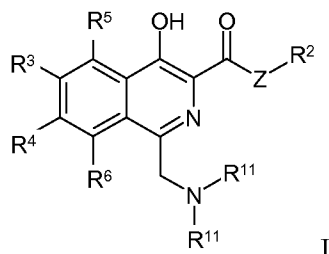
[0007] Other methods for the preparation of substituted isoquinoline compounds have been reported in U.S. Patent 7,629,357 and U.S. Patent 7,928,120. U.S. Patent 7,928,120 teaches the preparation of substituted cyanoisoquinoline compounds from an optionally substituted 2-methylbenzoic acid ester via reaction with a halogenating reagent to provide the corresponding 2-(halomethyl)benzoic acid ester, followed by reaction with a N-protected glycine ester, and finally cyclization/aromatization using a base and optionally an oxidizing agent. Such methods have an advantage over the documents described hereinabove in that the disclosed process affords only a single isomer of the 5-, 6-, 7-, or 8-substituted isoquinoline compounds. However, only halo and cyano substituents at the 1-position of the isoquinoline are provided. U.S. Patent 7,629,357 discloses methods for the synthesis of various substituents at the 1-position of variously substituted isoquinoline compounds, including 1-methyl isoquinoline compounds. The 1-methyl isoquinoline compounds of U.S. Patent 7,629,357 are prepared by first reacting the corresponding 1,4-dihydroxyisoquinoline compound with phosphorous oxychloride or phosphorous oxybromide to afford the 1-chloro or 1-bromoisquinoline compound, followed by methylation using either trimethylboroxine with tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium or an excess of n-butyllithium followed by methyl iodide.

SUMMARY

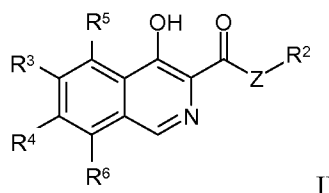
[0008] The present invention relates to methods for synthesizing variously substituted isoquinoline compounds, and the intermediate compounds achieved thereby, safely and efficiently on a large scale. Specifically, the methods disclosed herein provide the desired 5-, 6-, 7-, or 8-substituted isoquinoline compound as a single regioisomer without the need for chromatographic separation, and do not utilize reagents such as phosphorous oxychloride, phosphorous oxybromide, n-butyllithium or trimethylboroxine, which can be unsafe and/or costly when used in a large scale.

[0009] Also provided are novel intermediate compounds achieved by the methods. The compounds disclosed herein can be used as, or in the preparation of, isoquinoline compounds for inhibiting HIF hydroxylase activity, thereby increasing the stability and/or activity of hypoxia inducible factor (HIF). Such compounds are useful for the treatment of disorders associated with ischemia and hypoxia, and for treatment of erythropoietin associated disorders, including *inter alia*, anemia (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 7,629,357).

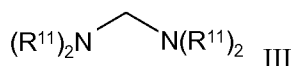
[0010] In one aspect, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula I or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



the method comprising contacting a compound of formula II:



with a compound of formula III:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula I; wherein

Z is O, NR¹, or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

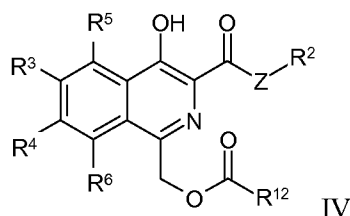
R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, sub-

stituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and

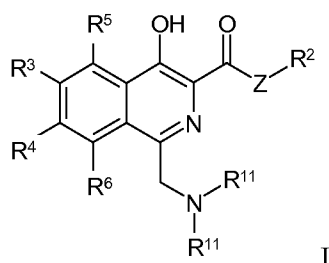
R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹⁰ and R¹³, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; and

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl or aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl.

[0011] In another aspect, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula IV or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

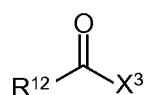


the method comprising contacting a compound of formula I:

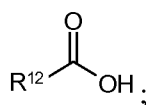


with one of the following:

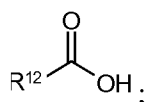
(a) a compound of formula



followed by a compound of formula

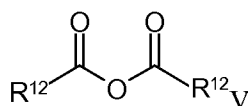


(b) a compound of formula R¹²-X³ followed by a compound of formula



or

(c) a compound of formula V:



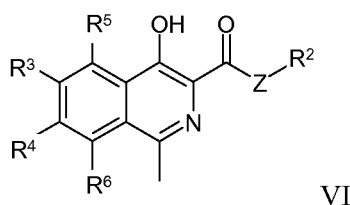
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV; wherein

X^3
 R^{12}

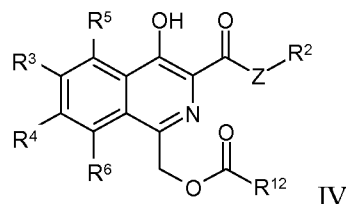
is halo;
is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or when two R^{12} are present, two R^{12} together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl; and

Z , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above.

[0012] In another aspect, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VI or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



the method comprising converting a compound of formula IV:



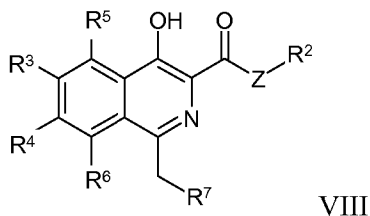
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VI; wherein

Z , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above; and

R^{12}

is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0013] In another aspect, the invention is directed to a compound of formula VIII:



wherein:

Z , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above;

R^7

is $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$ or $-OC(O)R^{12}$; and

R¹²

is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroar-
yl, and heterocyclyl;

or a salt, ester, stereoisomer, or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;

provided that the compound is not 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester.

[0014] Additional embodiments of the invention are described throughout.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[0015] Before the compounds and methods are described, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular compounds, compositions, methodologies, protocols, cell lines, assays, and reagents described, as these may vary. It is also to be understood that the terminology used herein is intended to describe particular embodiments of the present invention, and is in no way intended to limit the scope of the present invention as set forth in the appended claims.

Definitions

[0016] It must be noted that as used herein, and in the appended claims, the singular forms "a," "an," and "the" include plural references unless the context clearly dictates otherwise.

[0017] Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meanings as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Although any methods and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the present invention, the preferred methods, devices, and materials are now described. All publications cited herein are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety for the purpose of describing and disclosing the methodologies, reagents, and tools reported in the publications that might be used in connection with the invention. Nothing herein is to be construed as an admission that the invention is not entitled to antedate such disclosure by virtue of prior invention.

[0018] The practice of the present invention will employ, unless otherwise indicated, conventional methods of chemistry, biochemistry, molecular biology, cell biology, genetics, immunology, and pharmacology, within the skill of the art. Such techniques are explained fully in the literature. See, e.g., Gennaro, A.R., ed. (1990) Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 18th ed., Mack Publishing Co.; Colowick, S. et al., eds., Methods In Enzymology, Academic Press, Inc.; D.M. Weir, and C.C. Blackwell, eds. (1986) Handbook of Experimental Immunology, Vols. I-IV, Blackwell Scientific Publications; Maniatis, T. et al., eds. (1989) Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd edition, Vols. I-III, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press; Ausubel, F. M. et al., eds. (1999) Short Protocols in Molecular Biology, 4th edition, John Wiley & Sons; Ream et al., eds. (1998) Molecular Biology Techniques: An Intensive Laboratory Course, Academic Press; Newton & Graham eds. (1997) PCR (Introduction to Biotechniques Series), 2nd ed., Springer Verlag.

[0019] The term "alkyl" refers to saturated monovalent hydrocarbonyl groups having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, more particularly from 1 to 5 carbon atoms, and even more particularly 1 to 3 carbon atoms. This term is exemplified by groups such as methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, *iso*-propyl, n-butyl, *t*-butyl, n-pentyl, and the like.

[0020] The term "substituted alkyl" refers to an alkyl group of from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, more particularly 1 to 5 carbon atoms, and having from 1 to 5 substituents, or 1 to 3 substituents, each of which substituents is independently selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, amino, substituted amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, oxo, thio, carboxyl, carboxyl esters, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, thio, alkylthio, substituted alkylthio, arylthio, substituted arylthio, cycloalkylthio, substituted cycloalkylthio, heteroarylthio, substituted heteroarylthio, heterocyclylthio, substituted heterocyclylthio, sulfonyl, substituted sulfonyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, and -OSO₂-NR⁴⁰R⁴⁰, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-alkyl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-substituted alkyl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-aryl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-substituted aryl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-substituted heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-heterocyclic, and -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-substituted heterocyclic, where each R⁴⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen or alkyl. This group is exemplified by groups such as trifluoromethyl, benzyl, pyrazol-1-ylmethyl, etc.

[0021] The term "alkoxy" refers to the group "alkyl-O-," which includes, by way of example, methoxy, ethoxy, n-propoxy, *iso*-propoxy, n-butoxy, *t*-butoxy, *sec*-butoxy, n-pentoxy, and the like.

[0022] The term "substituted alkoxy" refers to the group "substituted alkyl-O-".

[0023] The term "acyl" refers to the groups H-C(O)-, alkyl-C(O)-, substituted alkyl-C(O)-, alkenyl-C(O)-, substituted

alkenyl-C(O)-, alkynyl-C(O)-, substituted alkynyl-C(O)-, cycloalkyl-C(O)-, substituted cycloalkyl-C(O)-, aryl-C(O)-, substituted aryl-C(O)-, heteroaryl-C(O)-, substituted heteroaryl-C(O)-, heterocyclic-C(O)-, and substituted heterocyclic-C(O)-, provided that a nitrogen atom of the heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic is not bound to the -C(O)- group, wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

[0024] The term "aminoacyl" or "amide", or the prefix "carbamoyl", "carboxamide," "substituted carbamoyl" or "substituted carboxamide", refers to the group -C(O)NR⁴²R⁴² where each R⁴² is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic; or where each R⁴² is joined to form together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

[0025] The term "acyloxy" refers to the groups alkyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkyl-C(O)O-, alkenyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkenyl-C(O)O-, alkynyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkynyl-C(O)O-, aryl-C(O)O-, substituted aryl-C(O)O-, cycloalkyl-C(O)O-, substituted cycloalkyl-C(O)O-, heteroaryl-C(O)O-, substituted heteroaryl-C(O)O-, heterocyclic-C(O)O-, and substituted heterocyclic-C(O)O-, wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

[0026] The term "alkenyl" refers to a vinyl unsaturated monovalent hydrocarbyl group having from 2 to 6 carbon atoms, or 2 to 4 carbon atoms, and having at least 1, or from 1 to 2 sites of vinyl (>C=C<) unsaturation. Such groups are exemplified by vinyl (ethen-1-yl), allyl, but-3-enyl and the like. This term includes both E (trans) and Z (cis) isomers as appropriate. It also includes mixtures of both E and Z components.

[0027] The term "substituted alkenyl" refers to alkenyl groups having from 1 to 3 substituents, or 1 to 2 substituents, selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, amino, substituted amino, aminoacyl, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, carboxyl, carboxyl esters, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic. This term includes both E (trans) and Z (cis) isomers as appropriate. It also includes mixtures of both E and Z components.

[0028] The term "alkynyl" refers to acetylenic unsaturated monovalent hydrocarbyl groups having from 2 to 6 carbon atoms, or 2 to 3 carbon atoms, and having at least 1, or from 1 to 2 sites of acetylenic (-C≡C-) unsaturation. This group is exemplified by ethyn-1-yl, propyn-1-yl, propyn-2-yl, and the like.

[0029] The term "substituted alkynyl" refers to alkynyl groups having from 1 to 3 substituents, or 1 to 2 substituents, selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, amino, substituted amino, aminoacyl, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, carboxyl, carboxyl esters, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic. This group is exemplified by groups such as phenylethynyl, etc.

[0030] The term "amino" refers to the group -NH₂.

[0031] The term "substituted amino" refers to the group -NR⁴¹R⁴¹, where each R⁴¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, sulfonyl, and substituted sulfonyl, or the R⁴¹ groups can be joined together with the nitrogen atom to form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring; provided that both R⁴¹ groups are not hydrogen. This group is exemplified by phenylamino, methylphenylamino, and the like. This group is further exemplified by groups such as (ethanic acid-2-yl)amino, etc.

[0032] The term "acylamino" refers to the groups -NR⁴⁵C(O)alkyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted alkyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)cycloalkyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted cycloalkyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)alkenyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted alkenyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)alkynyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted alkynyl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)aryl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted aryl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁵C(O)heterocyclic, and -NR⁴⁵C(O)substituted heterocyclic where R⁴⁵ is hydrogen or alkyl, and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are defined herein.

[0033] The term "oxycarbonylamino" refers to the groups -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-alkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted alkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-alkenyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted alkenyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-alkynyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted alkynyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-cycloalkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted cycloalkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-aryl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted aryl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-heterocyclic, and -NR⁴⁶C(O)O-substituted heterocyclic where R⁴⁶ is hydrogen or alkyl, and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

[0034] The term "oxythiocarbonylamino" refers to the groups -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-alkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted alkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-alkenyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted alkenyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-alkynyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted alkynyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-cycloalkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted cycloalkyl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-aryl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted aryl,

-NR⁴⁶C(S)O-heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted heteroaryl, -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-heterocyclic, and -NR⁴⁶C(S)O-substituted heterocyclic where R⁴⁶ is hydrogen or alkyl, and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

[0035] The term "aminocarbonyloxy," or the prefix "carbamoyloxy" or "substituted carbamoyloxy," refers to the groups -OC(O)NR⁴⁷R⁴⁷ where each R⁴⁷ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic; or where each R⁴⁷ is joined to form, together with the nitrogen atom, a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic, and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

[0036] The term "aminocarbonylamino" refers to the group -NR⁴⁹C(O)N(R⁴⁹)₂ where each R⁴⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl.

[0037] The term "aminothiocarbonylamino" refers to the group -NR⁴⁹C(S)N(R⁴⁹)₂ where each R⁴⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl.

[0038] The term "aryl" or "Ar" refers to a monovalent aromatic carbocyclic group of from 6 to 14 carbon atoms having a single ring (e.g., phenyl) or multiple condensed rings (e.g., naphthyl or anthryl) which condensed rings may or may not be aromatic (e.g., 2-benzoxazolinone, 2H-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4H)-one-7-yl, and the like) provided that the point of attachment is the aryl group. Preferred aryls include phenyl and naphthyl.

[0039] The term "substituted aryl" refers to aryl groups, as defined herein, which are substituted with from 1 to 4, particularly 1 to 3, substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, amidino (-C(=NH)-amino or substituted amino), amino, substituted amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocycloxy, substituted heterocycloxy, carboxyl, carboxyl esters, cyano, thio, alkylthio, substituted alkylthio, arylthio, substituted arylthio, heteroarylthio, substituted heteroarylthio, cycloalkylthio, substituted cycloalkylthio, heterocyclicthio, substituted heterocyclicthio, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino (-NH-C(=NH)-amino or substituted amino), halo, nitro, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, sulfonyl, substituted sulfonyl, -OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, and -OSO₂-NR⁵¹R⁵¹, -NR⁵¹S(O)₂-NR⁵¹-alkyl, -NR⁵¹S(O)₂-NR⁵¹-substituted alkyl, -NR⁵¹S(O)₂-NR⁵¹-aryl, -NR⁵¹S(O)₂-NR⁵¹-substituted aryl, -NR⁵¹S(O)-NR⁵¹-heteroaryl, -NR⁵¹S(O)-NR⁵¹-substituted heteroaryl, -NR⁵¹S(O)₂-NR⁵¹-heterocyclic, -NR⁵¹S(O)₂-NR⁵¹-substituted heterocyclic, where each R⁵¹ is independently selected from hydrogen or alkyl, wherein each of the terms is as defined herein. This group is exemplified by groups such as 4-fluorophenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 2-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 3-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 2-chloro-6-fluorophenyl, 2,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-cyanophenyl, 4-cyanophenyl, 4-phenoxyphenyl, 4-methanesulfonylphenyl, biphenyl-4-yl, etc.

[0040] The term "aryloxy" refers to the group aryl-O- that includes, by way of example, phenoxy, naphthoxy, and the like.

[0041] The term "substituted aryloxy" refers to substituted aryl-O- groups.

[0042] The term "aryloxyaryl" refers to the group -aryl-O-aryl.

[0043] The term "substituted aryloxyaryl" refers to aryloxyaryl groups substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents on either or both aryl rings as defined above for substituted aryl.

[0044] The term "carboxyl" refers to -COOH or salts thereof.

[0045] The term "carboxyl ester" refers to the groups -C(O)O-alkyl, -C(O)O-substituted alkyl, -C(O)O-alkenyl, -C(O)O-substituted alkenyl, -C(O)O-alkynyl, -C(O)O-substituted alkynyl, -C(O)O-cycloalkyl, -C(O)O-substituted cycloalkyl, -C(O)O-aryl, -C(O)O-substituted aryl, -C(O)O-heteroaryl, -C(O)O-substituted heteroaryl, -C(O)O-heterocyclic, and -C(O)O-substituted heterocyclic.

[0046] The term "cyano" refers to the group -CN.

[0047] The term "cycloalkyl" refers to a saturated or an unsaturated but nonaromatic cyclic alkyl group of from 3 to 10, 3 to 8 or 3 to 6 carbon atoms having single or multiple cyclic rings including, by way of example, adamantyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclooctyl, cyclohexenyl, and the like.

[0048] The term "substituted cycloalkyl" refers to a cycloalkyl group, having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of oxo (=O), thioxo (=S), alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, amino, substituted amino, aminoacyl, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cyano, halogen, hydroxy, nitro, carboxyl, carboxyl esters, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic.

[0049] The term "cycloalkoxy" refers to -O-cycloalkyl groups.

[0050] The term "substituted cycloalkoxy" refers to -O-substituted cycloalkyl groups.

[0051] The term "halo" or "halogen" refers to fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo.

[0052] The term "hydroxy" or "hydroxyl" refers to the group -OH.

[0053] The term "heteroaryl" refers to an aromatic ring of from 1 to 15 carbon atoms, or from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, and 1 to 4 heteroatoms within the ring selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur. Such heteroaryl groups can have a single ring (e.g., pyridinyl, furyl, or thienyl) or multiple condensed rings (e.g., indolizinyl or benzothienyl) provided the point of attachment is through a ring containing the heteroatom and that ring is aromatic. The nitrogen and/or sulfur ring atoms can optionally be oxidized to provide for the N-oxide or the sulfoxide, and sulfone derivatives. Examples of heteroaryls include but are not limited to, pyridinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, thienyl, and furyl.

[0054] The term "substituted heteroaryl" refers to heteroaryl groups that are substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents selected from the same group of substituents defined for substituted aryl. This group is exemplified by groups such as 5-fluoro-pyridin-3-yl, 1-benzyl-1H-[1,2,3]triazol-4-yl, 5-bromo-furan-2-yl, trifluoromethyl-2H-pyrazol-3-yl, etc.

[0055] The term "heteroaryloxy" refers to the group -O-heteroaryl and "substituted heteroaryloxy" refers to the group -O-substituted heteroaryl.

[0056] The terms "heterocyclyl" and "heterocyclic" are used interchangeably herein. As used herein, the terms refer to a saturated or unsaturated (but not aromatic) group having a single ring or multiple condensed rings, from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, and from 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen within the ring wherein, in fused ring systems, one or more of the rings can be aryl or heteroaryl provided that the point of attachment is at the heterocycle. The nitrogen and/or sulfur ring atoms can optionally be oxidized to provide for the N-oxide or the sulfoxide, and sulfone derivatives.

[0057] The term "substituted heterocyclyl" or "substituted heterocyclic" refers to heterocycle groups that are substituted with from 1 to 3 of the same substituents as defined for substituted cycloalkyl.

[0058] Examples of heterocycles and heteroaryls include, but are not limited to, azetidiny, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, indolyl, dihydroindolyl, indazolyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, isoquinolinyl, quinolinyl, phthalazinyl, naphthylpyridinyl, quinoxalinyl, quinazolinyl, cinnolinyl, pteridinyl, carbazolyl, carbolinyl, phenanthridinyl, acridinyl, phenanthrolinyl, isothiazolyl, phenazinyl, isoxazolyl, phenoxazinyl, phenothiazinyl, imidazolidinyl, imidazolyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, indolyl, phthalimidyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]thiophenyl, thiazolyl, thiazolidinyl, thiophenyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl (also referred to as thiamorpholinyl), piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuranlyl, and the like.

[0059] The term "nitro" refers to the group -NO₂.

[0060] The term "oxo" refers to the atom (=O) or to the atom (-O⁻).

[0061] The term "sulfonyl" refers to the group -S(O)₂H. The term "substituted sulfonyl" refers to the group -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂-substituted alkyl, -SO₂-alkenyl, -SO₂-substituted alkenyl, -SO₂-alkynyl, -SO₂-substituted alkynyl, -SO₂-cycloalkyl, -SO₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO₂-cycloalkenyl, -SO₂-substituted cycloalkenyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-substituted aryl, -SO₂-heteroaryl, -SO₂-substituted heteroaryl, -SO₂-heterocyclic, -SO₂-substituted heterocyclic, wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl are as defined herein. Substituted sulfonyl includes groups such as methyl-SO₂-, phenyl-SO₂-, and 4-methylphenyl-SO₂-.

[0062] The term "heterocycliloxy" refers to the group -O-heterocyclic, and "substituted heterocycliloxy" refers to the group -O-substituted heterocyclic.

[0063] The term "thio" or "mercapto" refers to the group -SH.

[0064] The term "alkylsulfanyl," "alkylthio," or "thioether" refers to the groups -S-alkyl where alkyl is as defined above.

[0065] The term "substituted alkylthio," "substituted alkylsulfanyl," or "substituted alkylthio" refers to the group -S-substituted alkyl where substituted alkyl is as defined above.

[0066] The term "cycloalkylthio" or "cycloalkylsulfanyl" refers to the groups -S-cycloalkyl where cycloalkyl is as defined above.

[0067] The term "substituted cycloalkylthio" refers to the group -S-substituted cycloalkyl where substituted cycloalkyl is as defined above.

[0068] The term "arylthio" or "arylsulfanyl" refers to the group -S-aryl, and "substituted arylthio" refers to the group -S-substituted aryl where aryl and substituted aryl are as defined above.

[0069] The term "heteroarylthio" or "heteroarylsulfanyl" refers to the group -S-heteroaryl, and "substituted heteroarylthio" refers to the group -S-substituted heteroaryl where heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl are as defined above.

[0070] The term "heterocyclithio" or "heterocyclisulfanyl" refers to the group -S-heterocyclic, and "substituted heterocyclithio" refers to the group -S-substituted heterocyclic where heterocyclic, and substituted heterocyclic are as defined above.

[0071] The term "ester" refers to compounds as disclosed herein that include the group -COOR⁵⁴ where R⁵⁴ is alkyl, or substituted alkyl.

[0072] The term "amine" refers to an organic compound that contains a basic nitrogen atom with a lone pair of electrons. Amines are derivatives of ammonia, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms have been replaced by a substituent such as an alkyl or aryl group. The basic nitrogen atom may also be part of a heterocyclic or heteroaryl ring.

[0073] It is understood that in all substituted groups defined above, polymers arrived at by defining substituents with further substituents to themselves (e.g., substituted aryl having a substituted aryl group as a substituent which is itself substituted with a substituted aryl group, etc.) are not intended for inclusion herein. Also not included are infinite numbers of substituents, whether the substituents are the same or different. In such cases, the maximum number of such substituents is three. Each of the above definitions is thus constrained by a limitation that, for example, substituted aryl groups are limited to -substituted aryl-(substituted aryl)-substituted aryl.

[0074] Similarly, it is understood that the above definitions are not intended to include impermissible substitution patterns (e.g., methyl substituted with 5 fluoro groups or a hydroxyl group alpha to ethenyl or acetylenic unsaturation). Such impermissible substitution patterns are well known to the skilled artisan.

[0075] The term compound and molecule are used interchangeably. Other forms contemplated by the invention when the word "molecule" or "compound" is employed are salts, prodrugs, solvates, tautomers, stereoisomers and mixtures of stereoisomers. In some embodiments, the salts are pharmaceutically acceptable salts.

[0076] The term "pharmaceutically acceptable" refers to those properties and/or substances that are acceptable to a patient (e.g., human patient) from a toxicological and/or safety point of view.

[0077] The term "salt" means salts of the compounds of the present disclosure, which may be prepared with relatively nontoxic acids or bases, depending on the particular substituents found on the compounds described herein. When compounds of the present disclosure contain relatively acidic functionalities (e.g., -COOH group), base addition salts can be obtained by contacting the compound (e.g., neutral form of such compound) with a sufficient amount of the desired base, either neat or in a suitable inert solvent. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable base addition salts include lithium, sodium, potassium, calcium, ammonium, organic amino, magnesium and aluminum salts and the like. When compounds of the present disclosure contain relatively basic functionalities (e.g., amines), acid addition salts can be obtained, e.g., by contacting the compound (e.g., neutral form of such compound) with a sufficient amount of the desired acid, either neat or in a suitable inert solvent. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts include those derived from inorganic acids like hydrochloric, hydrobromic, nitric, carbonic, monohydrogencarbonic, phosphoric, diphosphoric, monohydrogenphosphoric, dihydrogenphosphoric, sulfuric, monohydrogensulfuric, hydriodic and the like, as well as the salts derived from relatively nontoxic organic acids like formic, acetic, propionic, isobutyric, malic, maleic, malonic, benzoic, succinic, suberic, fumaric, lactic, mandelic, phthalic, benzenesulfonic, p-tolylsulfonic, citric, tartaric, methanesulfonic, 2-hydroxyethylsulfonic, salicylic, stearic and the like. Also included are salts of amino acids such as arginate and the like, and salts of organic acids like glucuronic or galacturonic acids and the like (see, for example, Berge et al., Journal of Pharmaceutical Science, 1977, 66: 1-19). Certain specific compounds of the present disclosure contain both, basic and acidic, functionalities that allow the compounds to be converted into either base or acid addition salts. In addition, the counterion can be exchanged using conventional methods known in the art.

[0078] The neutral forms of the compounds can be regenerated, for example, by contacting the salt with a base or acid and isolating the parent compound in the conventional manner. The parent form of the compound can differ from the various salt forms in certain physical properties, such as solubility in polar solvents, but otherwise the salts are equivalent to the parent form of the compound for the purposes of the present disclosure.

[0079] When a compound includes a negatively charged oxygen atom "O⁻", e.g., in "-COO⁻", then the formula is meant to optionally include a proton or an organic or inorganic cationic counterion (e.g., Na⁺). In one example, the resulting salt form of the compound is pharmaceutically acceptable. Further, when a compound of the present disclosure includes an acidic group, such as a carboxylic acid group, e.g., written as the substituent "-COOH", "-CO₂H" or "-C(O)₂H", then the formula is meant to optionally include the corresponding "de-protonated" form of that acidic group, e.g., "-COO⁻", "-CO₂⁻" or "-C(O)₂⁻", respectively.

[0080] Likewise, when a compound includes a positively charged nitrogen atom "N⁺", then the formula is meant to optionally include an organic or inorganic anionic counterion (e.g., Cl⁻). In one example, the resulting salt form of the compound is pharmaceutically acceptable. Further, when a compound of the present disclosure includes a basic group, such as an amine, then the formula is meant to optionally include the corresponding "protonated" form of that basic group, e.g., "NH⁺".

[0081] Compounds of the present disclosure can exist in all tautomeric forms and, therefore, all tautomeric forms and mixtures of tautomers are included in the compounds disclosed herein.

[0082] Compounds of the present disclosure can also exist in particular geometric or stereoisomeric forms. The present disclosure contemplates all such compounds, including *cis*- and *trans*-isomers, (-)- and (+)-enantiomers, diastereomers, (D)-isomers, (L)-isomers, the racemic mixtures thereof, and other mixtures thereof, such as enantiomerically or diastereomerically enriched mixtures, as falling within the scope of the present disclosure. Additional asymmetric carbon atoms can be present in a substituent such as an alkyl group. All such isomers, as well as mixtures thereof, are intended to be included in this disclosure. When the compounds described herein contain olefinic double bonds or other centers of

geometric asymmetry, and unless specified otherwise, it is intended that the compounds include both E and Z geometric isomers.

[0083] Optically active (*R*)- and (*S*)-isomers and *d* and *l* isomers can be prepared using chiral synthons or chiral reagents, or resolved using conventional techniques. Resolution of the racemates can be accomplished, for example, by conventional methods such as crystallization in the presence of a resolving agent; chromatography, using, for example a chiral HPLC column; or derivatizing the racemic mixture with a resolving reagent to generate diastereomers, separating the diastereomers via chromatography, and removing the resolving agent to generate the original compound in enantiomerically enriched form. Any of the above procedures can be repeated to increase the enantiomeric purity of a compound. If, for instance, a particular enantiomer of a compound of the present disclosure is desired, it can be prepared by asymmetric synthesis, or by derivatization with a chiral auxiliary, where the resulting diastereomeric mixture is separated and the auxiliary group cleaved to provide the pure desired enantiomers. Alternatively, where the molecule contains a basic functional group, such as an amino group, or an acidic functional group, such as a carboxyl group, diastereomeric salts can be formed with an appropriate optically active acid or base, followed by resolution of the diastereomers thus formed by fractional crystallization or chromatographic means known in the art, and subsequent recovery of the pure enantiomers. In addition, separation of enantiomers and diastereomers is frequently accomplished using chromatography employing chiral, stationary phases, optionally in combination with chemical derivatization (e.g., formation of carbamates from amines).

[0084] The term "reaction conditions" is intended to refer to the physical and/or environmental conditions under which a chemical reaction proceeds. Examples of reaction conditions include, but are not limited to, one or more of following: reaction temperature, solvent, pH, pressure, reaction time, mole ratio of reactants, the presence of a base or acid, or catalyst, etc. Reaction conditions may be named after the particular chemical reaction in which the conditions are employed, such as, coupling conditions, hydrogenation conditions, acylation conditions, reduction conditions, etc. Reaction conditions for most reactions are generally known to those skilled in the art or can be readily obtained from the literature. It is also contemplated that the reaction conditions can include reagents in addition to those listed in the specific reaction.

[0085] The term "amino-protecting group" refers to those organic groups intended to protect the nitrogen atom against undesirable reactions during synthetic procedures and includes, but is not limited to, silyl ethers, such as 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl (SEM) ether, or alkoxymethyl ethers, such as methoxymethyl (MOM) ether, *tert*-butoxymethyl (BUM) ether, benzyloxymethyl (BOM) ether or methoxyethoxymethyl (MEM) ether. Additional protecting groups include, *tert*-butyl, acetyl, benzyl, benzyloxycarbonyl (carbobenzyloxy, CBZ), *p*-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, *p*-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (BOC), trifluoroacetyl, and the like.

[0086] Certain protecting groups may be preferred over others due to their convenience or relative ease of removal, or due to their stereospecific effects in subsequent steps of the process. Additional suitable amino protecting groups are taught in T. W. Greene and P.G. M. Wuts, *Protecting Groups in Organic Synthesis*, Third Edition, Wiley, New York, 1999, and references cited therein which are all incorporated by reference in its entirety.

[0087] The term "anhydrous reaction conditions" is intended to refer to reaction conditions wherein water is excluded. Such conditions are known to one of skill in the art, and typically comprise one or more of dry or distilled solvents and reagents, dried reaction vessels, and/or the presence of a drying agent, such as activated molecular sieves, magnesium sulfate, sodium sulfate, etc.

[0088] The term "hydrogenation conditions" or "hydrogenation reaction conditions" is intended to refer to suitable conditions and catalysts for forming one or more new C-H bonds. Hydrogenation conditions or hydrogenation reaction conditions typically include a catalyst, such as those based on platinum group metals (platinum, palladium, rhodium, and ruthenium) (e.g. Pd/C or PtO₂).

[0089] The term "inert atmosphere" is intended to refer to an atmosphere comprising a gas which does not react with the reactants and reagents during the desired reaction process. Typically an inert atmosphere excludes oxygen and/or moisture. Exemplary gases include nitrogen and argon.

[0090] The term "under pressure" is intended to refer to reaction conditions which are conducted under a pressure of greater than 1 atmosphere. Such reactions can be carried out in a par hydrogenator or in an otherwise sealed reaction vessel (i.e. a screw capped flask) where the reaction is performed under heat such that the solvent vapors increase the pressure within the reaction vessel.

[0091] The term "acid" is intended to refer to a chemical species that can either donate a proton or accept a pair of electrons from another species. Examples of acids include organic acids, such as carboxylic acids (e.g. lactic acid, acetic acid, formic acid, citric acid, oxalic acid, uric acid, etc.) and sulfonic acids (e.g., methanesulfonic acid, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid), mineral acids (e.g. hydrochloric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid, sulfuric acid, boric acid, hydrofluoric acid, hydrobromic acid), Lewis acids, etc. The term "Lewis acid" is used herein refers to a molecule or ion that can combine with another molecule or ion by forming a covalent bond with two electrons from the second molecule or ion. For use in the process of the invention, a Lewis acid is considered as an electron deficient species that can accept a pair of electrons. Examples of Lewis acids that can be used in the present invention are cations of metals and their complexes including

magnesium, calcium, aluminum, zinc, titanium, chromium, copper, boron, tin, mercury, iron, manganese, cadmium, gallium and barium. Their complex may include hydroxides, alkyls, alkoxides, halides and organic acid ligands such as acetates. Preferred examples of Lewis acids useful in the instant process are titanium alkoxides, particularly $\text{Ti}(\text{OEt})_4$ which additionally possesses dehydrating properties.

[0092] The term "base" is intended to refer to a chemical species that are proton acceptors. Suitable bases for use in the present invention include inorganic or organic bases. Examples of inorganic base include, but are not limited to, potassium hydroxide (KOH), barium hydroxide ($\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2$), caesium hydroxide (CsOH), sodium hydroxide (NaOH), strontium hydroxide ($\text{Sr}(\text{OH})_2$), calcium hydroxide ($\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$), lithium hydroxide (LiOH), rubidium hydroxide (RbOH), and magnesium hydroxide ($\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$). Organic bases can be neutral or negatively charged compounds which typically contain nitrogen atoms such as amines and nitrogen-containing heterocyclic compounds. Examples of neutral nitrogen containing organic bases include ammonia, pyridine, methyl amine, imidazole, 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine, 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine and the like. Examples of negatively charged organic bases includes alkyl lithium reagents, lithium dialkylamides, lithium alkyloxides, alkylmagnesium halides and the like.

Methods

[0093] The present invention provides methods for synthesizing variously substituted isoquinoline compounds, and the intermediate compounds achieved thereby. The methods enable the isoquinoline compounds to be prepared safely and efficiently on a large scale, such as would be desired for the commercial production of such compounds.

[0094] One advantage of the present methods over those disclosed previously is that the methods disclosed herein do not require the separation of regioisomers. For example, the methods disclosed in Suzuki et al. (*supra*), Weidmann et al. (*supra*), and U.S. Patent No. 7,629,357, provide a regioisomeric mixture of the 5- and 8-substituted isoquinoline compounds or the 6- and 7-substituted isoquinoline compounds, which are then separated using standard chromatographic methods. However, such separations are undesirable as the maximum theoretical yield for the step can be only 50%.

[0095] Another advantage of the present methods over those disclosed previously, is that the methods disclosed herein do not utilize hazardous and/or costly reagents. Specifically, the methods disclosed herein avoid the halogenation step and thus avoid reagents such as phosphorous oxychloride and phosphorous oxybromide (see, for example, previously disclosed synthesis in U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475 described in Scheme E herein, **E-400 to E-500**). These reagents are extremely destructive to tissue of the mucous membranes, upper respiratory tract, eyes, and skin. In addition, the methods avoid reagents such as n-butyllithium and trimethylboroxine, both of which require special handling procedures as they are very reactive to moisture. Therefore, the methods disclosed herein are advantageous over such methods which utilize undesirable reagents.

[0096] The methods of this invention employ starting compounds which can be prepared from readily available starting materials or the compounds as disclosed herein using, for example, the following general methods and procedures. It will be appreciated that where typical or preferred process conditions (i.e., reaction temperatures, times, mole ratios of reactants, solvents, pressures, etc.) are given, other process conditions can also be used unless otherwise stated. Optimum reaction conditions may vary with the particular reactants or solvent used, but such conditions can be determined by one skilled in the art by routine optimization procedures.

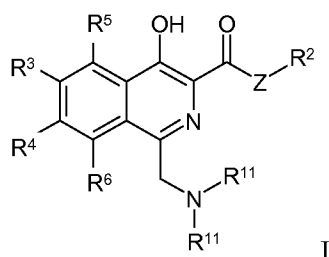
[0097] Additionally, as will be apparent to those skilled in the art, conventional protecting groups may be necessary to prevent certain functional groups from undergoing undesired reactions. Suitable protecting groups for various functional groups as well as suitable conditions for protecting and deprotecting particular functional groups are well known in the art. For example, numerous protecting groups are described in T. W. Greene and G. M. Wuts (1999) *Protecting Groups in Organic Synthesis*, 3rd Edition, Wiley, New York, and references cited therein.

[0098] Furthermore, the methods of this invention may employ compounds which contain one or more chiral centers. Accordingly, if desired, such compounds can be prepared or isolated as pure stereoisomers, i.e., as individual enantiomers or diastereomers, or as stereoisomer-enriched mixtures. All such stereoisomers (and enriched mixtures) are included within the scope of this invention, unless otherwise indicated. Pure stereoisomers (or enriched mixtures) may be prepared using, for example, optically active starting materials or stereoselective reagents well-known in the art. Alternatively, racemic mixtures of such compounds can be separated using, for example, chiral column chromatography, chiral resolving agents, and the like.

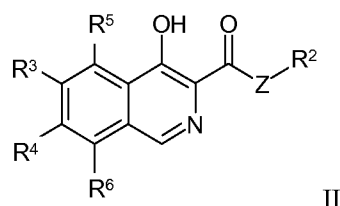
[0099] The starting materials for the following reactions are generally known compounds or can be prepared by known procedures or obvious modifications thereof. For example, many of the starting materials are available from commercial suppliers such as Aldrich Chemical Co. (Milwaukee, Wisconsin, U.S.A), Bachem (Torrance, California, U.S.A), Emka-Chemce or Sigma (St. Louis, Missouri, U.S.A). Others may be prepared by procedures, or obvious modifications thereof, described in standard reference texts such as Fieser and Fieser's *Reagents for Organic Synthesis*, Volumes 1-15 (John Wiley, and Sons, 1991), *Rodd's Chemistry of Carbon Compounds*, Volumes 1-5, and *Supplementals* (Elsevier Science Publishers, 1989), *Organic Reactions*, Volumes 1-40 (John Wiley, and Sons, 1991), *March's Advanced Organic Chem-*

istry, (John Wiley, and Sons, 5th Edition, 2001), and Larock's Comprehensive Organic Transformations (VCH Publishers Inc., 1989).

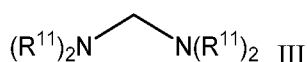
[0100] In one aspect, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula I or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



the method comprising contacting a compound of formula II:



with a compound of formula III:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula I; wherein

Z is O, NR¹, or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-;

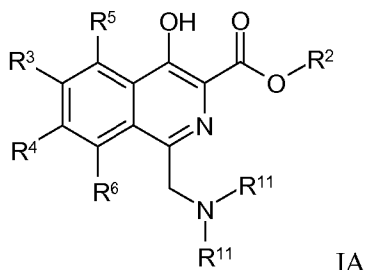
n is 0, 1, or 2;

R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and

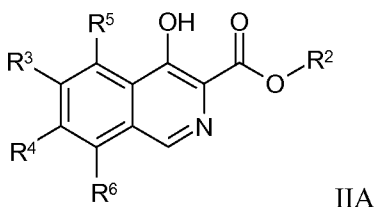
R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹⁰ and R¹³, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; and

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl.

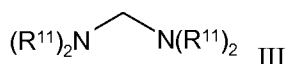
[0101] In particular embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula IA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising contacting a compound of formula IIA:



with a compound of formula III:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IA; wherein R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹³, n, X¹ and X² are as defined for formula I above.

[0102] The reaction may be carried out in glacial acetic acid or a polar aprotic solvent such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran (THF), dimethylformamide (DMF), or dimethylacetamide (DMAc) to produce compounds of formula I or IA with or without an acid catalyst. In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise an acid. The acid may be selected from, *e.g.*, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid, or an acidic ion exchange resin. In various embodiments, about 0.1-14 molar equivalents of acid may be used. In some embodiments, the acid is glacial acetic acid. In some embodiments, at least about 2 molar equivalents of glacial acetic acid are used. In particular embodiments, about 7 to about 8 molar equivalents of glacial acetic acid are used.

[0103] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted under an inert atmosphere, such as an argon or nitrogen atmosphere. In some embodiments, the reaction is conducted under a nitrogen atmosphere.

[0104] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions are anhydrous reaction conditions. Such conditions typically include drying reagents (*e.g.* molecular sieves), conducting the reaction under an inert atmosphere, and the like. Such methods are well known in the art.

[0105] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted at a temperature between room temperature (*ca* 25 °C) and 110 °C, and at a pressure from 0 to 60 psi. In some embodiments, the reaction is conducted at an elevated temperature, *i.e.*, at a temperature greater than about 30 °C. For example, the temperature can range from about 50 °C to about 60 °C.

[0106] In certain embodiments, from about 1.1 to about 1.5 molar equivalents of the compound of formula III is used.

[0107] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted in glacial acetic acid, and at a temperature range from about 50 °C to about 60 °C; and R¹¹ of a compound of formula III is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

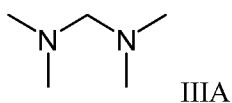
[0108] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted in glacial acetic acid, under a nitrogen atmosphere, and at a temperature range from about 50 °C to about 60 °C; and R¹¹ of a compound of formula III is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

[0109] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted in about 7 to about 8 molar equivalents of glacial acetic acid, at a temperature range from about 50 °C to about 60 °C, and about 1.1 to about 1.5 molar equivalents of a compound of formula III is used where R¹¹ is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

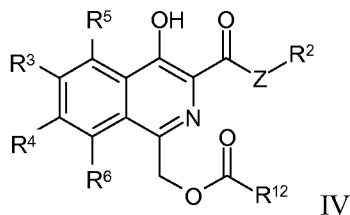
[0110] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted in about 7 to about 8 molar equivalents of glacial acetic acid,

under a nitrogen atmosphere, at a temperature range from about 50 °C to about 60 °C, and about 1.1 to about 1.5 molar equivalents of a compound of formula III is used where R¹¹ is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

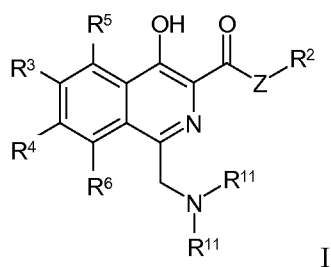
[0111] In certain embodiments, R¹¹ of a compound of formula III is C₁ to C₄ alkyl. In certain embodiments, the compound of formula III comprises a compound of formula IIIA:



[0112] In another aspect, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula IV or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

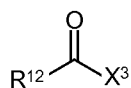


the method comprising contacting a compound of formula I:

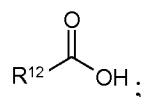


with one of the following:

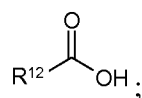
(a) a compound of formula



followed by a compound of formula

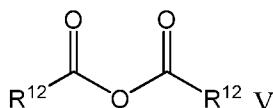


(b) a compound of formula R¹²-X³ followed by a compound of formula



or

(c) a compound of formula V:



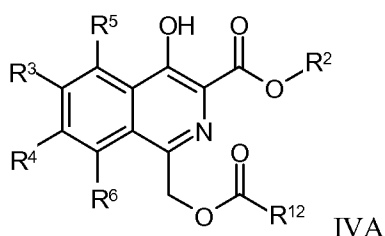
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV; wherein

X^3
 R^{12}

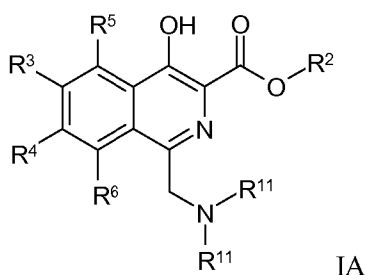
is halo;
is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or when two R^{12} are present, two R^{12} together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl; and

Z , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above.

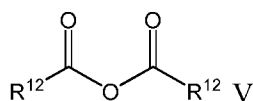
[0113] In one embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula IVA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising contacting a compound of formula IA:



with a compound of formula V:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVA; wherein

R^{12}

is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or when two R^{12} are present, two R^{12} together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl; and

R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above.

[0114] The reaction may be carried out in glacial acetic acid or a polar aprotic solvent such as dioxane, THF, DMF, or DMAc with or without an acid catalyst. In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise an acid. The acid may be selected from, e.g., acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid, or an acidic ion exchange

resin. In various embodiments, about 0.1-14 molar equivalents of acid may be used. In some embodiments, the acid is glacial acetic acid. In some embodiments, at least about 2 molar equivalents of glacial acetic acid are used. In particular embodiments, about 7 to about 8 molar equivalents of glacial acetic acid are used.

[0115] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted under an inert atmosphere, such as an argon or nitrogen atmosphere. In some embodiments, the reaction is conducted under a nitrogen atmosphere.

[0116] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions are anhydrous reaction conditions. Such conditions typically include drying reagents (e.g. molecular sieves), conducting the reaction under an inert atmosphere, and the like. Such methods are well known in the art.

[0117] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted at an elevated temperature, i.e., at a temperature greater than about 30 °C. For example, in certain embodiments, the temperature is about 100 °C.

[0118] In various embodiments, from about 1 to about 4 molar equivalents of the compound of formula V is used. In particular embodiments, where the compound of formula I or IA is isolated prior to reaction, about 1 molar equivalent of the compound of formula V is used. In other embodiments, from about 2 to about 3 molar equivalents of the compound of formula V is used. In certain embodiments, the compound of formula V comprises acetic anhydride.

[0119] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise a compound of formula V where R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; and the reaction is conducted at an elevated temperature.

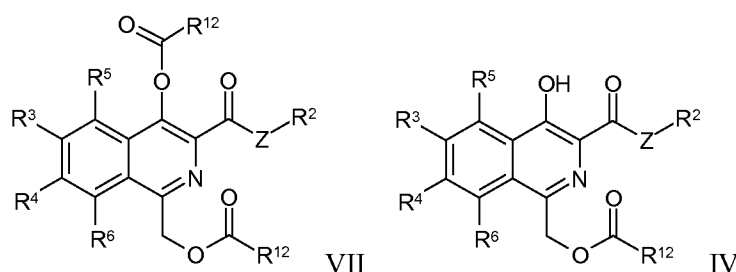
[0120] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise a compound of formula V where R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; and the reaction is conducted at a temperature of about 100°C.

[0121] In certain embodiments the reaction conditions comprise a compound of formula V where R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; and the reaction is conducted under an inert atmosphere, and at an elevated temperature. In certain embodiments, further a compound of formula V is acetic anhydride.

[0122] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise about 2 to about 3 molar equivalents of a compound of formula V where R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; and the reaction is conducted at a temperature of about 100 °C. In certain embodiments, further a compound of formula V is acetic anhydride.

[0123] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise about 2 to about 3 molar equivalents of a compound of formula V where R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; and the reaction is conducted under a nitrogen atmosphere, and at a temperature of about 100 °C. In certain embodiments, further a compound of formula V is acetic anhydride.

[0124] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions further comprise converting a compound of formula VII to a compound of formula IV:

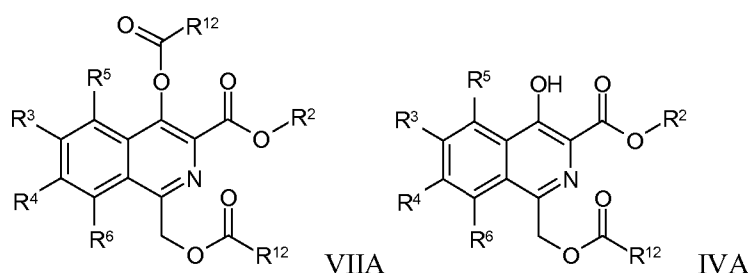


under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV;

wherein Z, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, R¹³, n, X¹ and X² are as defined for formula I above; and

R¹² is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0125] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions further comprise converting a compound of formula VIIA to a compound of formula IVA:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVA;

wherein R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above; and

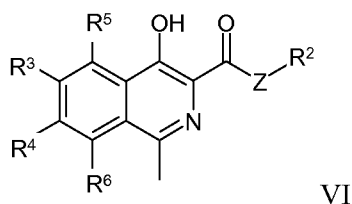
R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0126] In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted in a solvent selected from dichloromethane, ethyl acetate or THF. In particular embodiments, the solvent is dichloromethane.

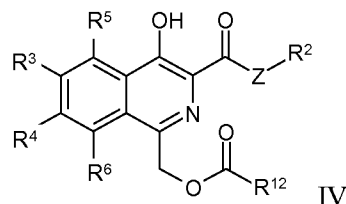
[0127] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise an amine. In some embodiments, the amine is morpholine. In certain embodiments, the reaction is conducted at a temperature from about 0 °C to about 10 °C.

[0128] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise morpholine; and the reaction is conducted in dichloromethane, and at a temperature from about 0 °C to about 10 °C.

[0129] In another aspect, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VI or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



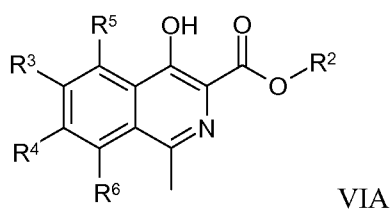
the method comprising converting a compound of formula IV:



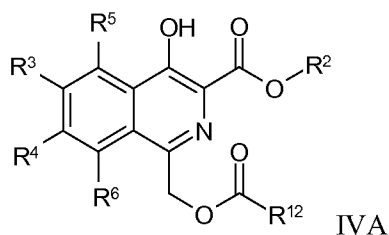
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VI;

wherein Z , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{13} , n , X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula I above; and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0130] In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VIA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising converting a compound of formula IVA:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VIA;

wherein R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, R¹³, n, X¹ and X² are as defined for formula I above; and

R¹² is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0131] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions to produce VI or VIA are hydrogenation reaction conditions. Such conditions typically comprise hydrogen. Such conditions also typically comprise a catalyst, such as a palladium catalyst (e.g. Pd/C, also known as palladium(0) on carbon). Alternatively, Pd(OH)₂/C or Raney nickel may be used.

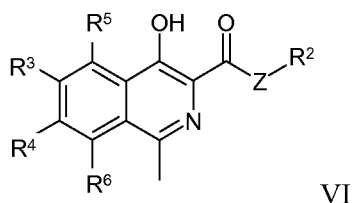
[0132] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise a solvent selected from dichloromethane, ethyl acetate, or methanol. In particular embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise dichloromethane. In particular embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise ethyl acetate.

[0133] In some embodiments, the reaction is conducted in a hydrogen atmosphere and under pressure, e.g., at about 20 to about 300 psi, or at about 60 psi. In some embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise a base, such as sodium carbonate or sodium bicarbonate. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction conditions comprise from about 0.5 to about 1 molar equivalents of sodium carbonate.

[0134] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise hydrogen, sodium carbonate, ethyl acetate, Pd/C, and a condition under pressure.

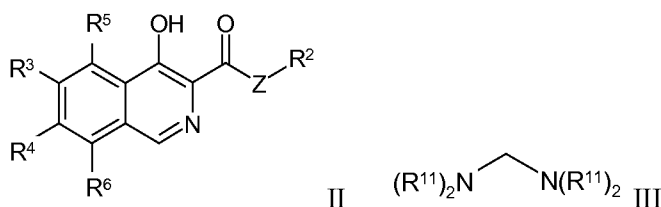
[0135] In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions comprise hydrogen, sodium carbonate, ethyl acetate, Pd/C, and a condition under pressure at about 60 psi.

[0136] In certain embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VI or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

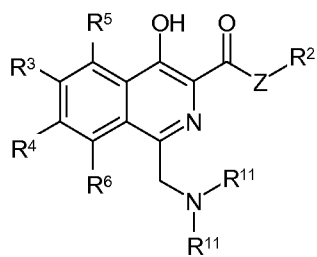


comprising the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula II with a compound of formula III



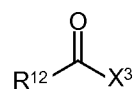
under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula I:



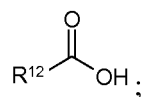
I

b) contacting a compound of formula I with one of the following:

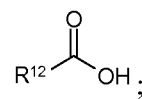
(i) a compound of formula



followed by a compound of formula

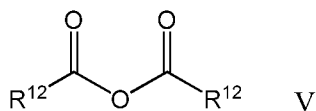


(ii) a compound of formula R¹²-X³ followed by a compound of formula



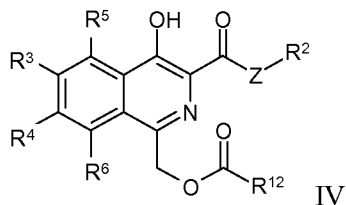
or

(iii) a compound of formula V:



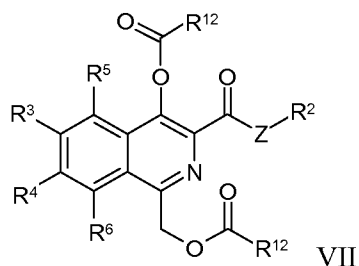
V

under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV:



IV

c) optionally converting a compound of formula VII:



to a compound of formula IV; and

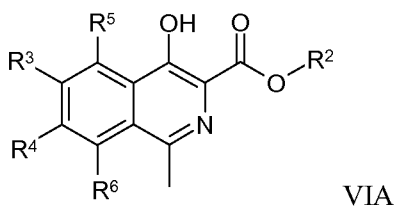
d) converting a compound of formula IV under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VI; wherein

X^3
 R^{12}

is halo;
is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or when two R^{12} are present, two R^{12} together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl; and

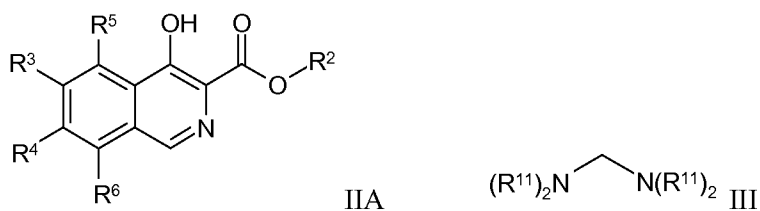
$Z, R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^8, R^9, R^{10}, R^{11}, R^{13}, n, X^1$ and X^2 are as defined for formula I above.

[0137] In certain embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VIA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

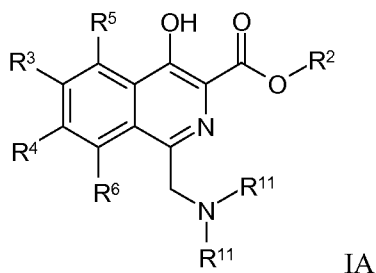


comprising the steps of:

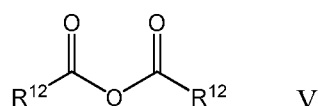
a) contacting a compound of formula IIA with a compound of formula III



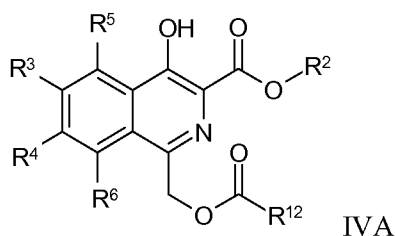
under reaction conditions to provide a compound of formula IA:



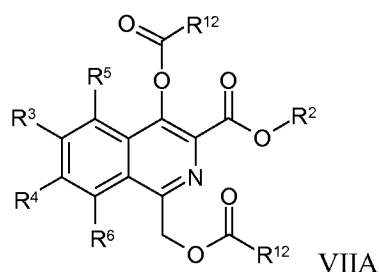
b) contacting a compound of formula IA with a compound of formula V



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVA:



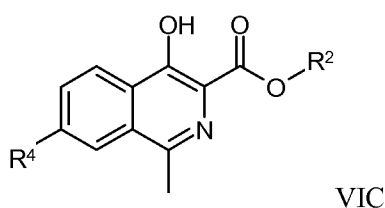
c) optionally converting a compound of formula VIIA



to a compound of formula IVA; and

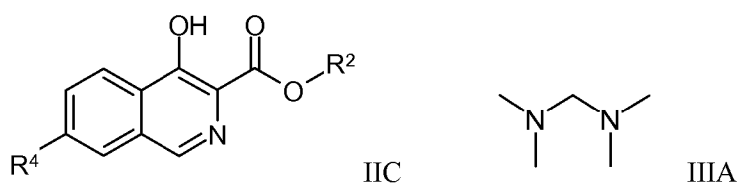
d) converting a compound of formula IVA under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VIA; wherein R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹³, n, X¹ and X² are as defined for formula I above; and R¹² is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0138] In certain embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VIC or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

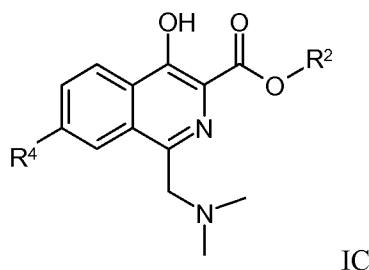


comprising the steps of:

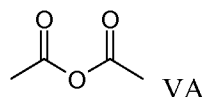
a) contacting a compound of formula IIC with a compound of formula IIIA



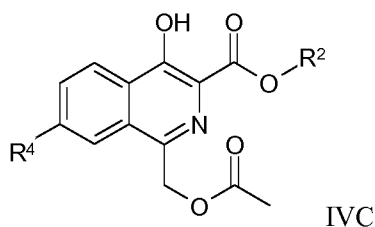
under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula IC:



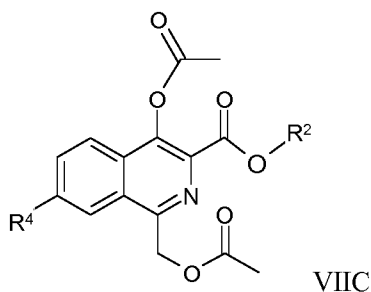
b) contacting a compound of formula IC with a compound of formula VA



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVC:



c) optionally converting a compound of formula VIIC



to a compound of formula IVC; and

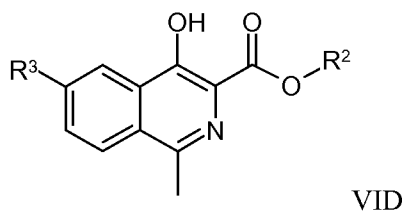
d) converting a compound of formula IVC under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VIC;
wherein

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl; and

R^4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$;
where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;
 n is 0, 1, or 2;

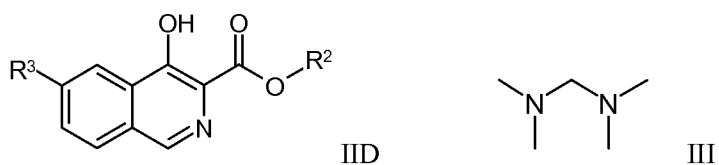
each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and
 R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl.

[0139] In certain embodiments, the present invention is directed to a method of making a compound of formula VID or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

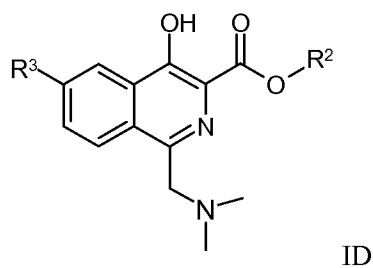


comprising the steps of:

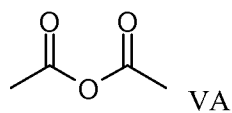
a) contacting a compound of formula IID with a compound of formula IIIA



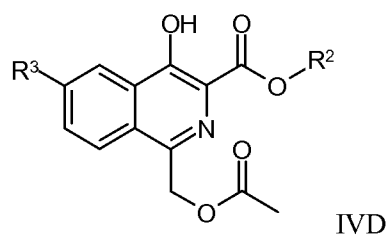
under reaction conditions to provide a compound of formula ID:



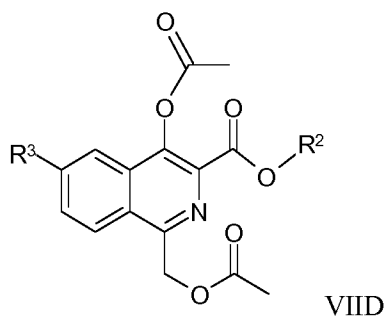
b) contacting a compound of formula ID with a compound of formula VA



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVD:



c) optionally converting a compound of formula VIID



to a compound of formula IVD; and

d) converting a compound of formula IVD under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VID;
wherein

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl; and

R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$;

where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl.

[0140] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen.

[0141] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is alkyl.

[0142] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^3 is phenoxy.

[0143] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^3 is 4-methoxyphenoxy.

[0144] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^3 is 3,5-difluorophenoxy.

[0145] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^4 is phenoxy.

[0146] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^4 is 4-methoxyphenoxy.

[0147] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^4 is 3,5-difluorophenoxy.

[0148] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen and R^3 is phenoxy.

[0149] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen and R^3 is 4-methoxyphenoxy.

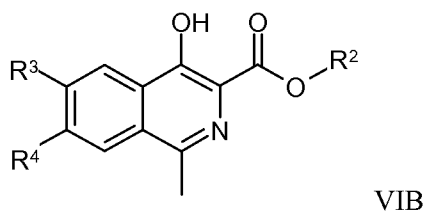
[0150] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen and R^3 is 3,5-difluorophenoxy.

[0151] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen and R^4 is phenoxy.

[0152] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen and R^4 is 4-methoxyphenoxy.

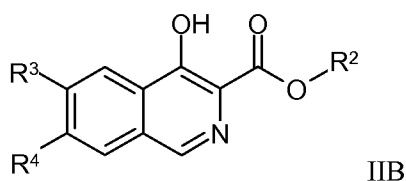
[0153] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen and R^4 is 3,5-difluorophenoxy.

[0154] In certain embodiments of the above methods described herein, the compound of formula VI is represented by formula VIB:



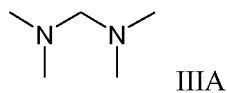
where R^2 , R^3 and R^4 are as defined for formula I above.

[0155] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula II is represented by formula IIB:

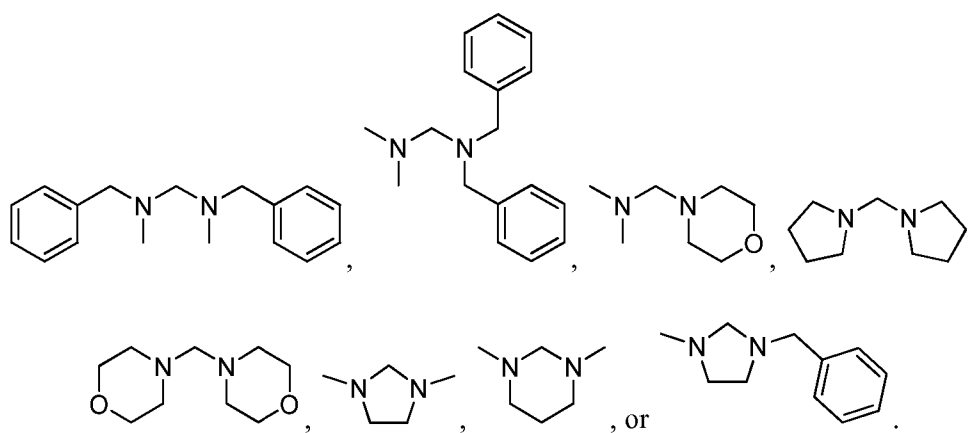


wherein R², R³ and R⁴ are as defined for formula I above.

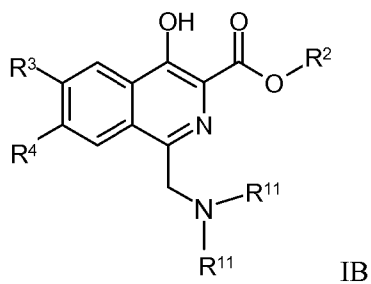
[0156] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula III is represented by formula IIIA:



[0157] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula III is represented by:

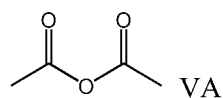


[0158] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula I is represented by formula IB:

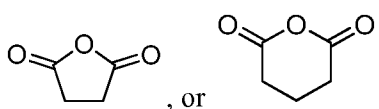


where R², R³, R⁴ and R¹¹ are as defined for formula I above.

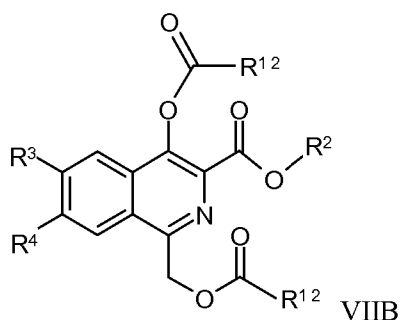
[0159] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula V is represented by formula VA:



[0160] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula V is represented by:

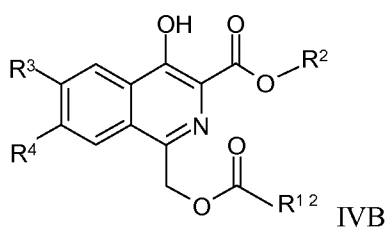


[0161] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula VII is represented by formula VIIB:



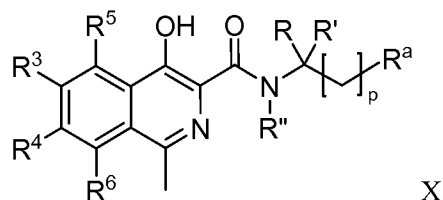
where R^2 , R^3 , and R^4 are as defined for formula I above, and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0162] In certain embodiments of the above methods, the compound of formula IV is represented by formula IVB:



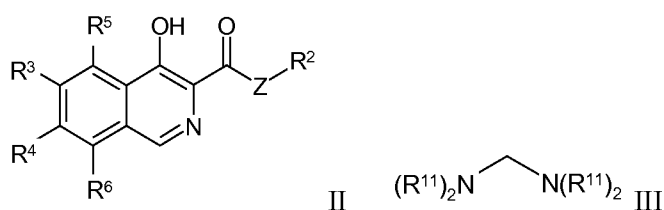
where R^2 , R^3 , and R^4 are as defined for formula I above, and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

[0163] In an alternative embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of making compounds represented by formula X or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

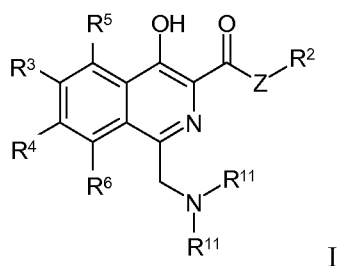


comprising the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula II with a compound of formula III

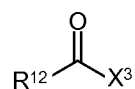


under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula I:

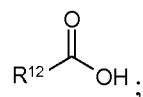


b) contacting a compound of formula I with one of the following:

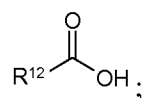
(iv) a compound of formula



followed by a compound of formula

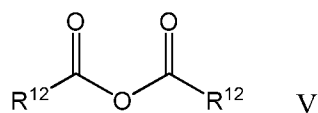


(v) a compound of formula R¹²-X³ followed by a compound of formula

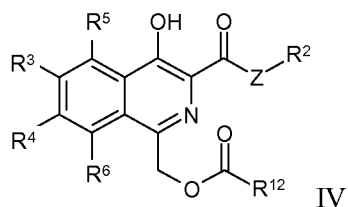


or

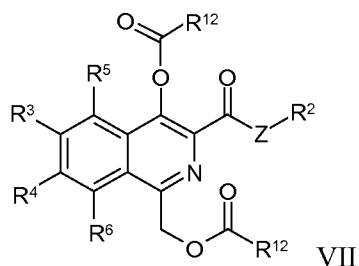
(vi) a compound of formula V:



under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV:

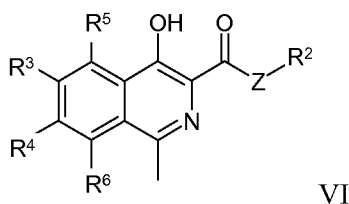


c) optionally converting a compound of formula VII:

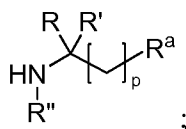


to a compound of formula IV;

d) converting a compound of formula IV; under conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VI; and



e) contacting a compound of formula VI with a compound of formula



under reaction conditions sufficient to provide a compound of formula X: wherein

Z, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, R⁹, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹³, n, X¹ and X²
X³
R¹²

p
W

R
R'

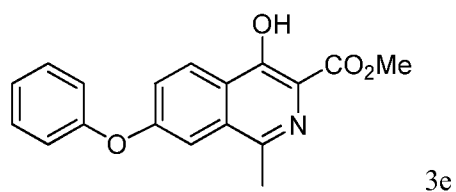
are as defined for formula I above;
is halo;
is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or when two R¹² are present, two R¹² together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl;
is 0 when R^a is -COOH; p is 1 when R^a is -WR¹⁸;
is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, -S(O)_n- and -NR¹⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, R¹⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, acyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl and R¹⁸ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl, or when W is -NR¹⁹- then R¹⁸ and R¹⁹, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or a substituted heterocyclyl group;
is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, deuterium and methyl;
is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, deuterium, alkyl and substituted alkyl; alternatively, R and R' and the carbon pendent thereto can

R"

be joined to form cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; and is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl or R" together with R' and the nitrogen pendent thereto can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

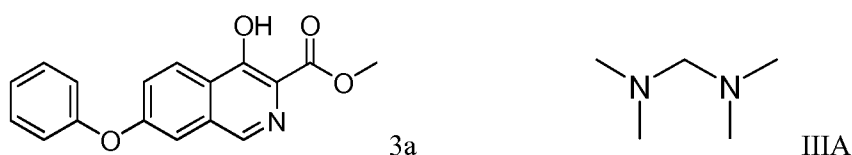
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers, mixture of stereoisomers, and esters thereof.

[0164] In another embodiment, the present disclosure is directed to a method of making methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (3e):

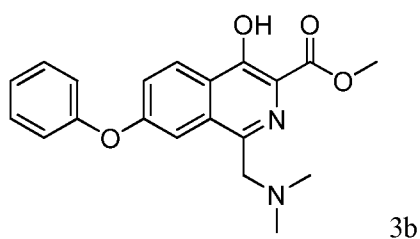


comprising the steps of:

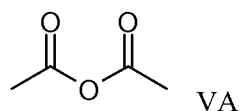
a) contacting a compound of formula 3a with a compound of formula IIIA



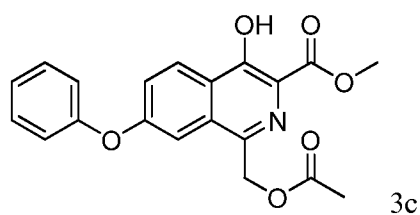
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula 3b:



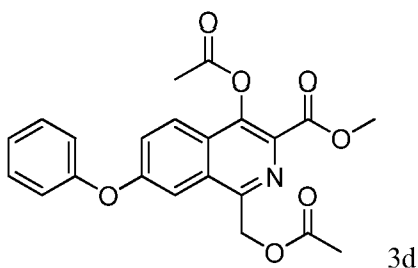
b) contacting a compound of formula 3b with a compound of formula VA



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula 3c:



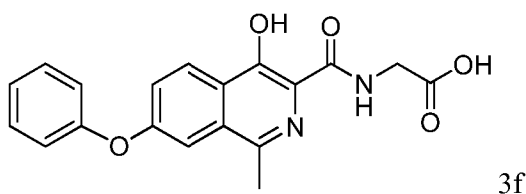
c) optionally converting a compound of formula 3d:



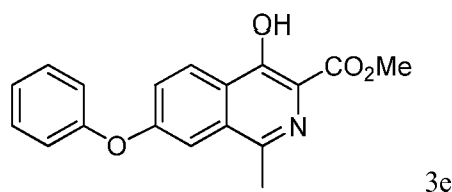
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula 3c; and

d) converting a compound of formula 3c under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula 3e.

[0165] In another embodiment, the present disclosure is directed to a method of making 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid (3f)

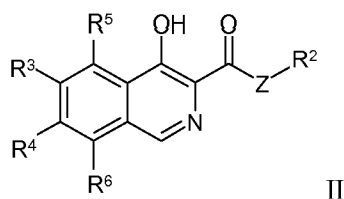


comprising contacting a compound of formula 3e with glycine or sodium glycinate



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula 3f.

[0166] Compounds of formula II:



for use in the methods disclosed herein can be prepared according to published procedures (see, for example, U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475).

[0167] In certain embodiments of the methods disclosed herein above, each of R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , and R^{10} are as defined below:

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$; where

X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, alkoxy, aryl, heteroaryl, and $-X^2R^{10}$; where

X^2 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^{13}-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl; and

R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or when X^2 is $-NR^{13}-$, then R^{10} and R^{13} , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl group;

wherein each alkyl, alkoxy, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl described above can be optionally substituted with from 1 to 3 R^{100} ,

wherein each R^{100} is independently selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, oxo, thioxo, carboxyl, carboxyl ester, cycloalkyl, thio, alkylthio, arylthio, cycloalkylthio, heteroarylthio, heterocyclicheterocyclylthio, sulfonyl, heteroaryl, heterocyclicheterocyclyl, cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, heterocycliloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, $-OS(O)_2$ -alkyl, $-OS(O)_2$ -aryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -heterocyclyl, $-OSO_2-NR^{40}R^{40}$, $-NR^{40}S(O)_2-NR^{40}$ -alkyl, $-NR^{40}S(O)_2-NR^{40}$ -aryl, $-NR^{40}S(O)_2-NR^{40}$ -heteroaryl, and $-NR^{40}S(O)_2-NR^{40}$ -heterocyclyl, where each R^{40} is independently selected from hydrogen and alkyl.

[0168] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^1 is hydrogen.

[0169] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R^2 is hydrogen or alkyl.

[0170] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$;

where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl.

[0171] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$; where

X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^8 is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R^9 is hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl.

[0172] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, and R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl.

[0173] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-; n is 0, 1, or 2; R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl; and R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl.

[0174] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, and R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl.

[0175] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen.

[0176] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R² is hydrogen or alkyl;
R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-; n is 0, 1, or 2; each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl; and R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-; n is 0, 1, or 2; R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl; and R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl.

[0177] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R² is hydrogen or alkyl;
R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-; n is 0, 1, or 2; R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl; and R⁹ is hydrogen, alkyl or aryl; or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl; and R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, and R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl.

[0178] In certain embodiments of the above methods,

R² is hydrogen or alkyl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, and R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl; and
R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen.

[0179] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R¹¹ is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

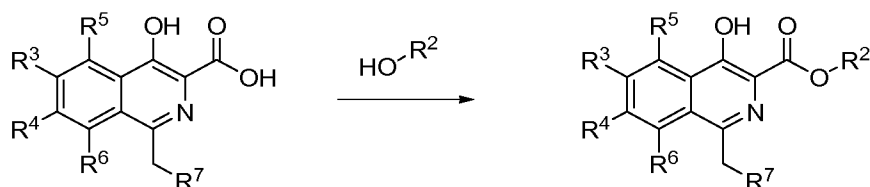
[0180] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R¹¹ is methyl.

[0181] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

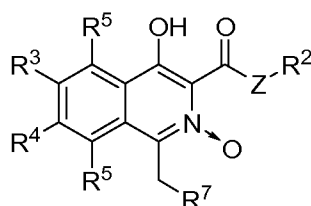
[0182] In certain embodiments of the above methods, R¹² is methyl.

[0183] In certain embodiments of the methods disclosed hereinabove, the methods further comprise the step of forming a corresponding salt of the compound. Such methods are well known in the art.

[0184] Other modifications to arrive at compounds of this invention are well within the skill of the art. For example, modification of the C-4 hydroxy group may be done by conventional means to corresponding ethers, acyloxy etc. to provide compounds of the invention. Specifically, esters can be prepared under standard coupling conditions by reacting a carboxylic acid containing compound with a compound comprising an alcohol in a suitable solvent, optionally at elevated temperatures. Accordingly, esters of the compounds disclosed herein can be formed at any carboxylic acid or hydroxyl functional group. Typical ester forming reactions to provide the compounds of the invention are shown below, where R² is as defined herein.

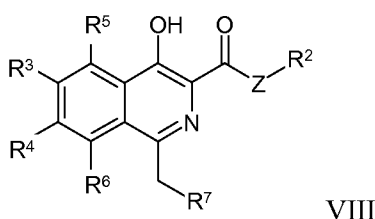


[0185] The N-oxide derivatives of the above described compounds can also be prepared using methods known within the skill of the art. Accordingly, compounds of the invention include N-oxide derivatives of the formula:



Compounds of the Invention

[0186] In another aspect, the invention is directed to a compound of formula VIII:



wherein:

Z is O, NR¹, or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted

heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$;
 where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;
 n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and $-X^2R^{10}$;
 where X^2 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^{13}-$;
 n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and

R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or when X^2 is $-NR^{13}-$, then R^{10} and R^{13} , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; and

R^7 is either $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$ or $-OC(O)R^{12}$;

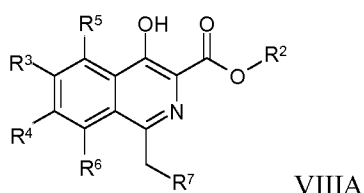
each R^{11} is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R^{11} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl; and

R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl;

or a salt, ester, stereoisomer, or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;

provided that the compound is not 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester.

[0187] In certain embodiments, the present invention is directed to a compound of formula VIIIA:



VIIIA

wherein:

R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , R^9 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{13} , n, X^1 and X^2 are as defined for formula VIII above;

or a salt, ester, stereoisomer, or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;

provided that the compound is not 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester.

[0188] In certain embodiments of the above compounds, R^2 is hydrogen, alkyl, or substituted alkyl.

[0189] In certain embodiments, R^2 is alkyl.

[0190] In certain embodiments, R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$; where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^8 is aryl or substituted aryl, and

R^9 is hydrogen, alkyl, or aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl.

[0191] In certain embodiments, R^5 and R^6 are hydrogen.

[0192] In certain embodiments, R^2 is alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl; and R^5 and R^6 are hydrogen.

[0193] In certain embodiments, R^7 is $-OC(O)R^{12}$. In certain embodiments, R^7 is $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$. In certain embodiments, R^7 is $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$; and R^1 is C_1 to C_4 alkyl. In certain embodiments, R^7 is $-OC(O)R^{12}$; and R^{12} is C_1 to C_4 alkyl.

[0194] In certain embodiments, Z is O.

[0195] In certain embodiments of the compounds disclosed hereinabove, each of R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁸, and R¹⁰ are as defined below:

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where

X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl; and

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, alkoxy, aryl, heteroaryl, and -X²R¹⁰; where

X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl; and

R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

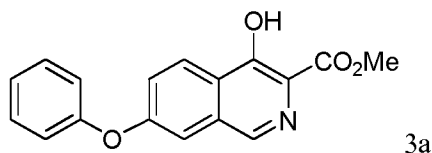
or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹⁰ and R¹³, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl group;

wherein each alkyl, alkoxy, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl described above can be optionally substituted with from 1 to 3 R¹⁰⁰,

wherein each R¹⁰⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, oxo, thioxo, carboxyl, carboxyl ester, cycloalkyl, thio, alkylthio, arylthio, cycloalkylthio, heteroarylthio, heterocyclicheterocyclylthio, sulfonyl, heteroaryl, heterocyclicheterocyclyl, cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, heterocycliloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-heterocyclyl, -OSO₂-NR⁴⁰R⁴⁰, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-alkyl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-aryl, -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-heteroaryl, and -NR⁴⁰S(O)₂-NR⁴⁰-heterocyclyl, where each R⁴⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen and alkyl;

provided that the compound is not 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester.

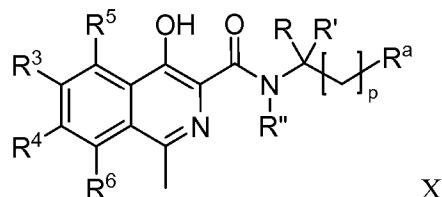
[0196] In another aspect, the invention is directed to 4-hydroxy-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester (3a):



Isoquinoline Synthesis

[0197] The compounds and methods of the invention can be used for the synthesis of various isoquinoline compounds. Such compounds are known to be useful for inhibiting HIF hydroxylase activity, thereby increasing the stability and/or

activity of hypoxia inducible factor (HIF), and can be used to treat and prevent HIF-associated conditions and disorders (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475). Exemplary substituted isoquinoline compounds which can be prepared using the methods disclosed herein include those represented by formula X:



wherein R³, R⁴, R⁵ and R⁶ are as defined for formula I above and:

p is 0 when R^a is -COOH; p is 1 when R^a is -WR¹⁸;

W is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, -S(O)_n- and -NR¹⁹-, where n is 0, 1, or 2, R¹⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, acyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl and R¹⁸ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl, or when W is -NR¹⁹-, then R¹⁸ and R¹⁹, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or a substituted heterocyclyl group;

R is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, deuterium and methyl;

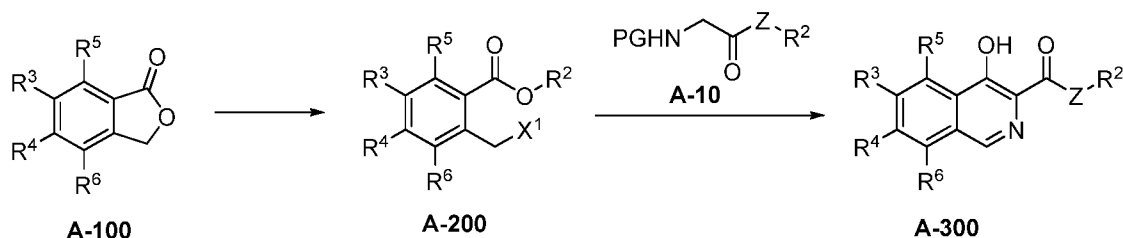
R' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, deuterium, alkyl and substituted alkyl; alternatively, R and R' and the carbon pendent thereto can be joined to form cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

R'' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl or R'' together with R' and the nitrogen pendent thereto can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, stereoisomers, mixture of stereoisomers, and esters thereof.

[0198] Exemplary methods for the preparation of compounds described herein are shown in the Schemes below, where Z, X³, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R¹¹, R¹², p , R^a, R, R' and R'' are as defined for formula I and formula X above, and PG is a standard amine protecting group.

Scheme A



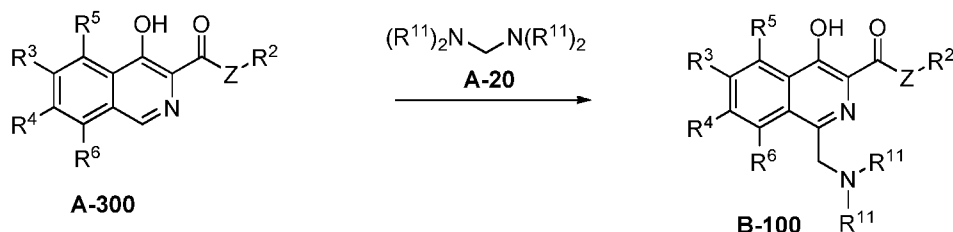
[0199] Compounds **A-200** for use in the reactions depicted in **Scheme A**, can be prepared by contacting compounds **A-100** with a suitable Lewis acid such as trimethyl borate, in the presence of a halogenating agent, such as dichlorotriphenylphosphorane and thionyl chloride to generate the acyl halide, which upon contact with an alcohol of the formula R²-OH, such as methanol, yields the corresponding halogenated ester **A-200**. Upon reaction completion, **A-200** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like; or, alternatively, used in the next step without purification and/or isolation.

[0200] Compounds **A-200** can be modified to **A-300** (formula II) by contacting **A-200** with about a stoichiometric amount of a suitable alpha-amino acid of formula **A-10** (wherein PG refers to a suitable protecting group such as mesyl, tosyl, etc.) and a catalytic amount of sodium iodide. The reaction is conducted under conventional coupling conditions well

known in the art. A suitable base is then added, such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide or another suitable base in methanol, DMF or another suitable solvent. The reaction is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Upon reaction completion, the compounds **A-300** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

[0201] Compounds **A-300** can be modified to **B-100** (formula I) by the methods of the present invention as shown in **Scheme B**.

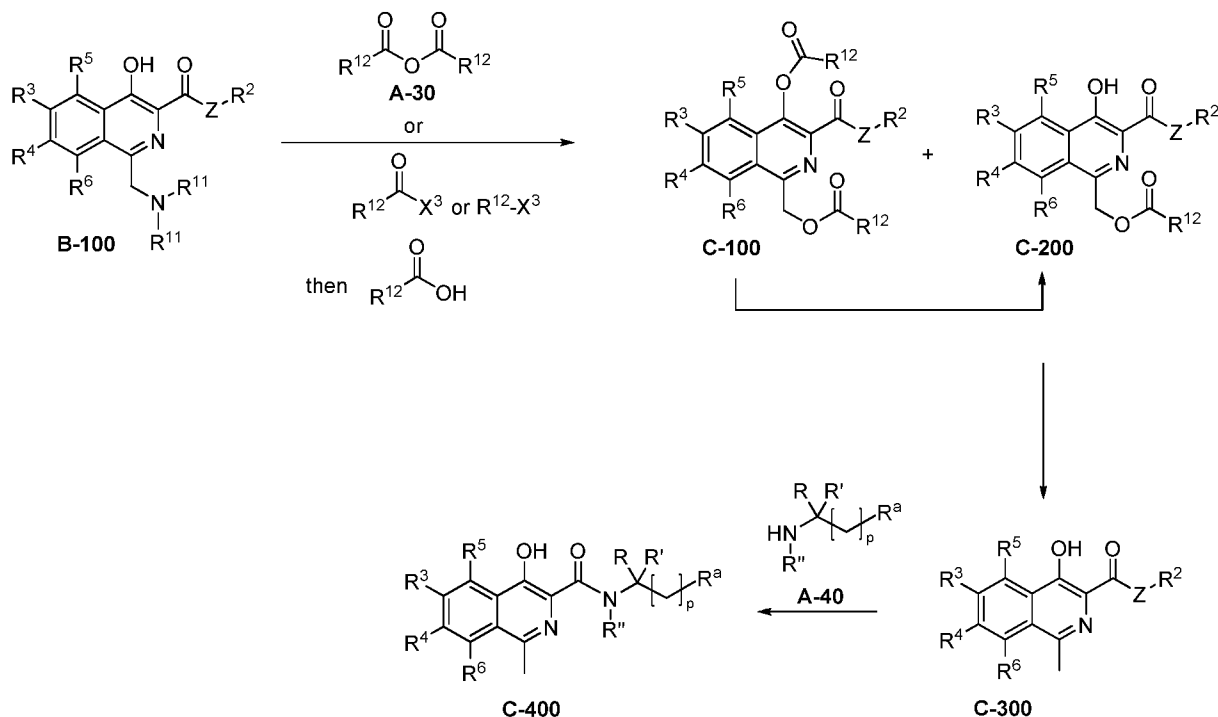
Scheme B



[0202] For example, contacting **A-300** with about a stoichiometric amount or a slight excess thereof of a compound of formula **A-20** (formula III) in the presence of an acid, such as acetic acid, provides compounds **B-100**. The reaction is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Upon reaction completion, the compounds **B-100** may be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like, or used in the next step without isolation and/or purification.

[0203] Compounds **B-100** (formula I) can be modified to compounds **C-100** (formula VII) and **C-200** (formula IV) by the methods of the present invention as shown in **Scheme C**.

Scheme C



[0204] For example, contacting **B-100** with an excess (e.g. 2 - 3 equivalents) of compound **A-30** (formula V) in the presence of an acid, such as acetic acid, provides compounds **C-100** and **C-200**. Alternatively, contacting **B-100** with an acyl halide of formula $\text{R}^{12}-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{X}^3$ or an alkyl halide of formula $\text{R}^{12}-\text{X}^3$, followed by an acid of formula $\text{R}^{12}-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, such as acetic acid, provides compounds **C-100** and **C-200**. The reaction is typically conducted at temperatures of about

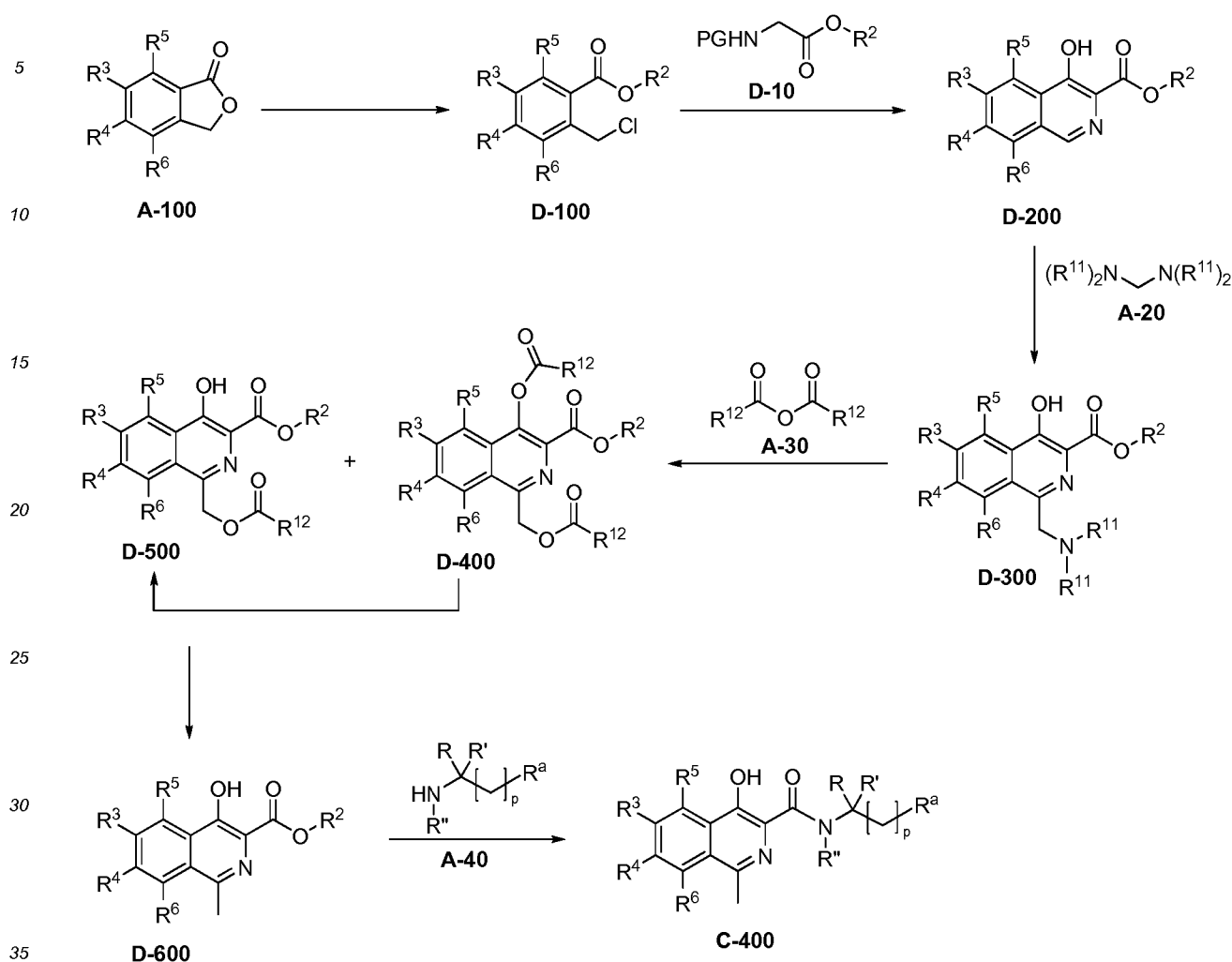
100 °C, and is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Compounds **C-200** can be provided by the methods of the present invention, such as reaction of the mixture of compounds **C-100** and **C-200** with an amine, such as morpholine in a suitable polar solvent, such as DMF. The reaction is typically performed at temperatures below room temperature (i.e. 0 to 10 °C). Upon reaction completion, the compounds **C-200** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

[0205] Compounds **C-200** (formula IV) can be modified to **C-300** (formula VI) under reaction conditions according to the present invention. In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions are hydrogenation reaction conditions. Such conditions typically comprise a catalyst, such as a palladium catalyst (e.g. palladium(0) on carbon), under a hydrogen atmosphere. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction is conducted under pressure. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction conditions comprise a base, such as sodium carbonate. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction conditions comprise from about 0.5 to about 1 molar equivalents of sodium carbonate.

[0206] Compounds **C-400** (formula X) can be synthesized by contacting compounds **C-300** (formula VI) with at least a stoichiometric amount or an excess of a suitable amino acid or derivative thereof **A-40** (particularly, but not limited to, glycine or its corresponding salts). The reaction is conducted under conventional coupling conditions well known in the art. In one embodiment, the reaction is conducted in the presence of sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide or another suitable base in methanol, DMF or another suitable solvent under elevated reaction temperatures and particularly at reflux. The reaction is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Alternatively, the reaction can be performed at elevated temperatures in a microwave oven. Upon reaction completion, the compounds **C-400** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

[0207] Specific methods for the preparation of such substituted isoquinoline compounds are shown in **Scheme D** below, where R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R¹¹, R¹², p, R^a, R, R' and R'' are as defined herein, and PG is a standard amine protecting group.

Scheme D



[0208] Compounds **D-100** for use in the reactions depicted in **Scheme D**, can be prepared by contacting compounds **A-100** with a suitable Lewis acid such as trimethyl borate, in the presence of dichlorotriphenylphosphorane and thionyl chloride to generate the acyl chloride, which upon contact with an alcohol, such as methanol, yields the corresponding ester **D-100**. Upon reaction completion, **D-100** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like; or, alternatively, used in the next step without purification and/or isolation.

[0209] Compounds **D-100** can be modified to **D-200** (formula IIA) by contacting **D-100** with about a stoichiometric amount of a suitable alpha-amino acid of formula **D-10** (wherein PG refers to a suitable protecting group such as mesyl, tosyl, etc.) and a catalytic amount of sodium iodide. The reaction is conducted under conventional coupling conditions well known in the art. A suitable base is then added, such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide or another suitable base in methanol, DMF or another suitable solvent. The reaction is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Upon reaction completion, the compounds **D-200** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

[0210] Compounds **D-200** can be modified to **D-300** (formula IA) by the methods of the present invention. For example, contacting **D-200** with about a stoichiometric amount or a slight excess thereof of a compound of formula **A-20** in the presence of an acid, such as acetic acid, provides compounds **D-300**. The reaction is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Upon reaction completion, the compounds **D-300** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

[0211] Compounds **D-300** can be modified to compounds **D-400** (formula VIIA) and **D-500** (formula IVA) by the methods of the present invention. For example, contacting **D-300** with an excess (e.g. 2 - 3 equivalents) of compound **A-30** in the presence of an acid, such as acetic acid, provides compounds **D-400** and **D-500**. The reaction is typically conducted at temperatures of about 100 °C, and is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1

to 72 h. Compounds **D-500** can be provided by the methods of the present invention, such as reaction of the mixture of compounds **D-400** and **D-500** with an amine, such as morpholine in a suitable polar solvent, such as DMF. The reaction is typically performed at temperatures below room temperature (e.g., 0 to 10 °C). Upon reaction completion, the compounds **D-500** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

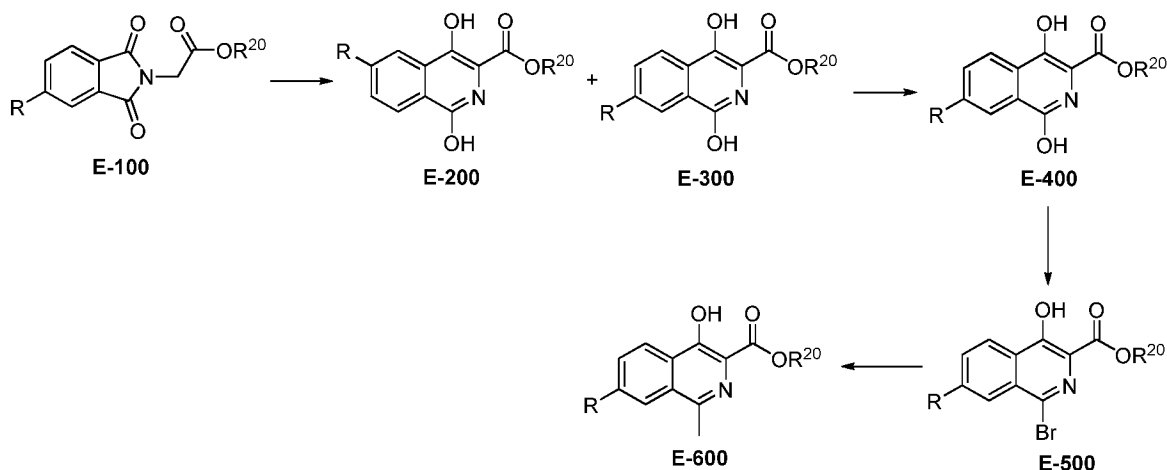
[0212] Compounds **D-500** can be modified to **D-600** (formula VIA) under reaction conditions according to the present invention. In certain embodiments, the reaction conditions are hydrogenation reaction conditions. Such conditions typically comprise a catalyst, such as a palladium catalyst (e.g. palladium(0) on carbon), under a hydrogen atmosphere. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction is conducted under pressure. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction conditions comprise a base, such as sodium carbonate. In some embodiments, the hydrogenation reaction conditions comprise from about 0.5 to about 1 molar equivalents of sodium carbonate.

[0213] Compounds **C-400** (formula X) can be synthesized by contacting compounds **D-600** with at least a stoichiometric amount or an excess of a suitable amino acid or derivative thereof **A-40** (particularly, but not limited to, glycine or its corresponding salts). The reaction is conducted under conventional coupling conditions well known in the art. In one embodiment, the reaction is conducted in the presence of sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide or another suitable base in methanol, DMF or another suitable solvent under elevated reaction temperatures and particularly at reflux. The reaction is continued until it is substantially complete which typically occurs within about 1 to 72 h. Alternatively, the reaction can be performed at elevated temperatures in a microwave oven. Upon reaction completion, the compounds **C-400** can be recovered by conventional techniques such as neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration and the like.

[0214] The compounds **A-100**, **A-10**, **A-20**, **A-30**, **A-40**, and **D-10** for use in the reactions depicted in the above Schemes are either available from commercial sources or can be prepared according to known literature procedures. Other modifications to the compounds provided by this invention are well within the skill of the art. For example, modification of the C-4 hydroxy group may be done by conventional means to corresponding ethers, acyloxy, and the like. In addition, compounds **A-40** can be used as provided in U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475.

[0215] In the art, isoquinoline compounds have been prepared according to methods which are not desirable for large scale production (Scheme E, where R²⁰ is a general abbreviation that represents a substituent group as described herein (i.e., alkyl, alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy, etc)). Exemplary substituent groups include alkyl, alkoxy, heteroalkyl, aryl, aryloxy, etc., each as defined herein. For example, isoquinoline compounds prepared according to U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475 involve the undesirable chromatographic separation of regioisomers **E-200** and **E-300**. It is contemplated that such a process would be inefficient on a large scale. In addition, the conversion of **E-400** to the corresponding bromide **E-500** in order to furnish the alkyl substitution on the isoquinoline ring of compounds **E-600** requires the use of phosphorus oxybromide which is both toxic and potentially explosive. Advantageously, in contrast to methods previously disclosed, the methods of the present invention do not require the use of such hazardous reagents for the synthesis of isoquinoline compounds.

Scheme E



[0216] The synthesis of 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester has been reported in U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475, using a mixture of 4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester, N,N-dimethylmethyleammonium iodide, and potassium carbonate in anhydrous dichloromethane. However, only 16% of the desired 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyl-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester was obtained. Advantageously, in contrast to methods previously disclosed, the methods of the present

invention provide good yields for the synthesis of compounds described herein.

Examples

[0217] The invention is further understood by reference to the following examples, which are intended to be purely exemplary of the invention. The present invention is not limited in scope by the exemplified embodiments, which are intended as illustrations of single aspects of the invention only. Any methods that are functionally equivalent are within the scope of the invention. Various modifications of the invention in addition to those described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and accompanying figures. Such modifications fall within the scope of the appended claims.

[0218] Unless otherwise stated all temperatures are in degrees Celsius (°C). Also, in these examples and elsewhere, abbreviations have the following meanings:

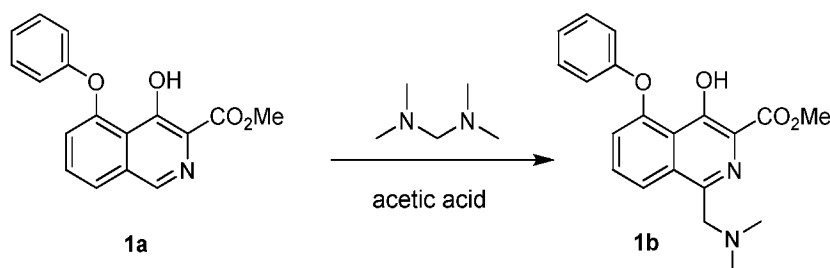
EtOH	= Ethanol
Et	= Ethyl
g	= Gram
h	= Hour
HPLC	= High-performance liquid chromatography
L	= Liter
MeOH	= Methanol
mg	= Milligram
min	= Minute
mL	= Milliliter
mM	= Millimolar
mmol	= Millimole
Ac	= Acetyl
NaOMe	= Sodium methoxide

EXAMPLE 1

Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1b)

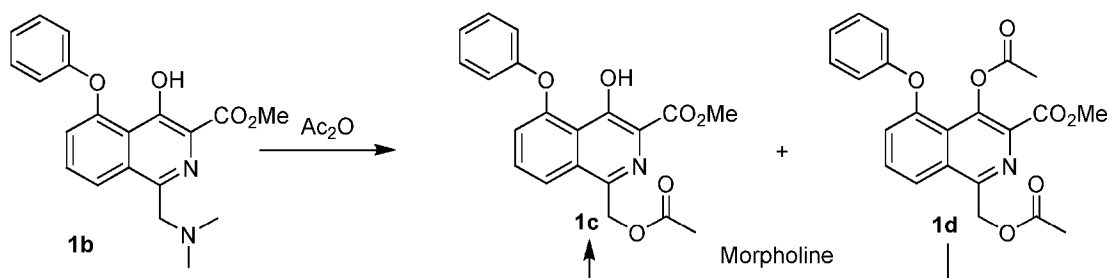
[0219]



[0220] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **1a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm$ 5%). The suspension of **1a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **1a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 ± 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-(acetoxymethyl)-4-hydroxy-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1c)

[0221]



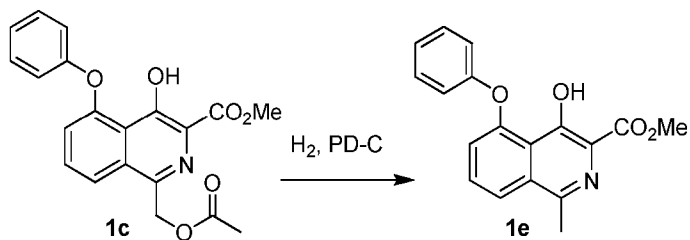
[0222] The solution of **1b** from Example 1a) can be cooled to below 25°C , at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50°C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, $20\text{--}25^\circ\text{C}$ temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine of **1b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to $100 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$ for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **1b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0223] **1d** can be converted to **1c** by the following procedure. The solution of **1c** and **1d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than $65 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$ with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30°C , the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at $20 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$ for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0224] **1c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to $5 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at $5 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$ for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **1d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **1c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at $50 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**1e**)

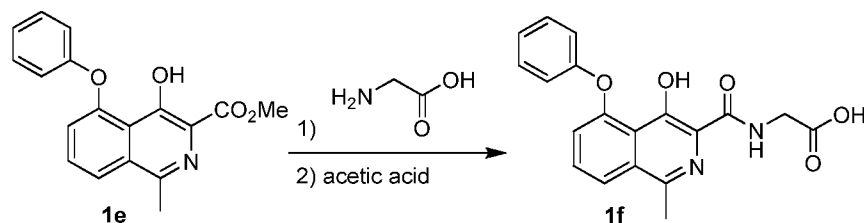
[0225]



[0226] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **1c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na_2CO_3 (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60°C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (**1c** <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to $20\text{--}25^\circ\text{C}$, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and dried under vacuum at $50 \pm 5^\circ\text{C}$.

d) Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid (**1f**)

[0227]



[0228] 2-(4-Hydroxy-1-methyl-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid can be prepared from **1e** according to the following procedure.

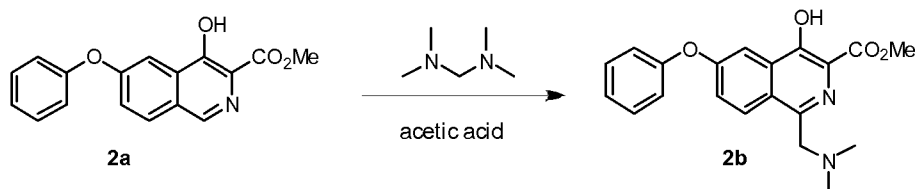
[0229] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **1e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents NaOCH_3) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **1e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-5-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid.

EXAMPLE 2

Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**2b**)

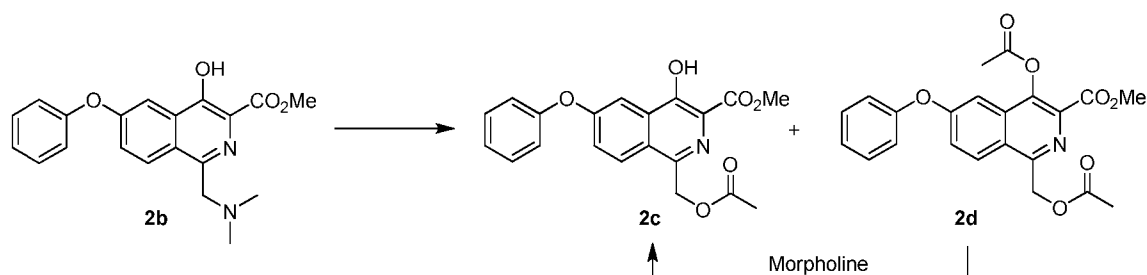
[0230]



[0231] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **2a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm 5\%$). The suspension of **2a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **2a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 ± 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-((acetoxy)methyl)-4-hydroxy-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**2c**)

[0232]



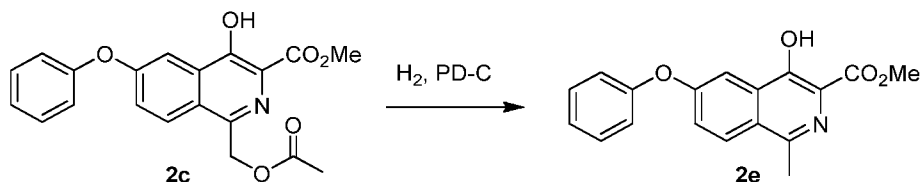
[0233] The solution of **2b** from Example 2a) can be cooled to below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50 °C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, 20-25 °C temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine or **2b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 100 ± 5 °C for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **2b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0234] **2d** can be converted to **2c** by the following procedure. The solution of **2c** and **2d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30 °C, the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at 20 ± 5 °C for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0235] **2c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at 5 ± 5 °C for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **2d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **2c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**2e**)

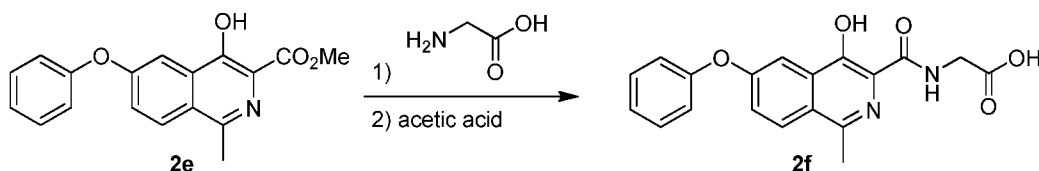
[0236]



[0237] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **2c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na₂CO₃ (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60 °C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (2c <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

d) Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid (**2f**)

[0238]



[0239] 2-(4-Hydroxy-1-methyl-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid is prepared from **2e** according to the following procedure.

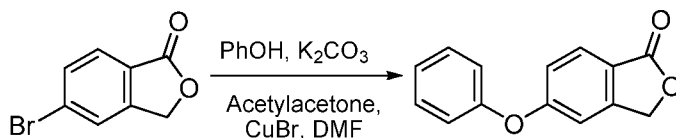
10 [0240] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **2e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents NaOCH₃) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **2e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid.

EXAMPLE 3

25 Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid

a) Preparation of 5-phenoxyphthalide

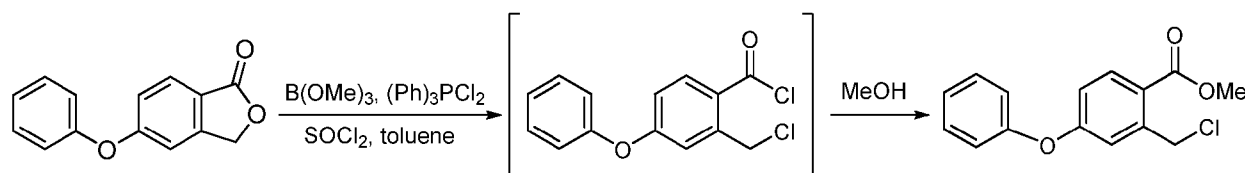
30 [0241]



40 [0242] A reactor was charged with DMF (68 Kg), and stirring was initiated. The reactor was then charged with phenol (51 Kg), acetylacetone (8 Kg), 5-bromophthalide (85 Kg), copper bromide (9 Kg), and potassium carbonate (77 Kg). The mixture was heated above 85 °C and maintained until reaction completion and then cooled. Water was added. Solid was filtered and washed with water. Solid was dissolved in dichloromethane, and washed with aqueous HCl and then with water. Solvent was removed under pressure and methanol was added. The mixture was stirred and filtered. Solid was washed with methanol and dried in an oven giving 5-phenoxyphthalide (Yield: 72%, HPLC: 99.6%).

b) Preparation of 2-chloromethyl-4-phenoxybenzoic acid methyl ester

45 [0243]

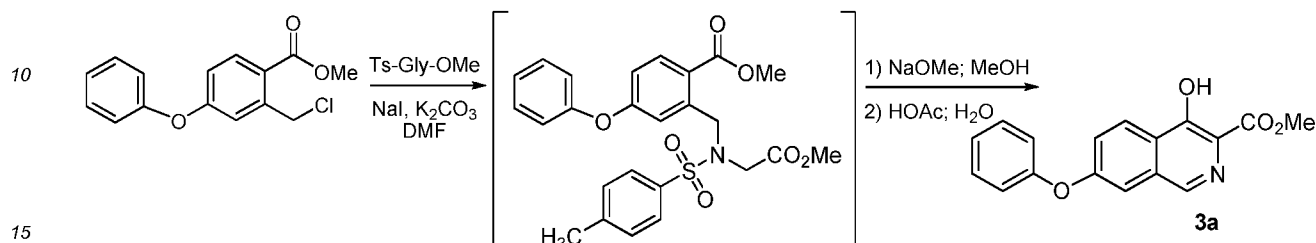


55 [0244] A reactor was charged with toluene (24 Kg), and stirring was initiated. The reactor was then charged with 5-phenoxyphthalide (56 Kg), thionyl chloride (41 Kg), trimethyl borate (1 Kg), dichlorotriphenylphosphorane (2.5 Kg), and potassium carbonate (77 Kg). The mixture was heated to reflux until reaction completion and solvent was removed leaving 2-chloromethyl-4-phenoxybenzoyl chloride. Methanol was charged and the mixture was heated above 50 °C

until reaction completion. Solvent was removed and replaced with DMF. This solution of the product methyl 2-chloromethyl-4-phenoxybenzoic acid methyl ester in DMF was used directly in the next step (HPLC: 85%).

c) Preparation of 4-hydroxy-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester (3a)

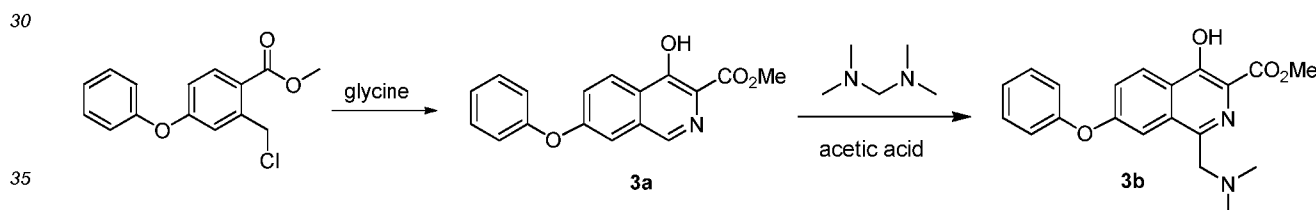
[0245]



[0246] A reactor was charged with a solution of 2-chloromethyl-4-phenoxybenzoic acid methyl ester (~8 Kg) in DMF, and stirring was initiated. The reactor was then charged with p-toluenesulfonylglycine methyl ester (66 Kg), potassium carbonate (60 Kg), and sodium iodide (4 Kg). The mixture was heated to at least 50 °C until reaction completion. The mixture was cooled. Sodium methoxide in methanol was charged and the mixture was stirred until reaction completion. Acetic acid and water were added, and the mixture was stirred, filtered and washed with water. Solid was purified by acetone trituration and dried in an oven giving **3a** (Yield from step b): 58%; HPLC: 99.4%). ¹H NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 11.60 (s, 1 H), 8.74 (s, 1H), 8.32 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.60 (dd, J = 2.3 & 9.0 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (m, 3 H), 7.24 (m, 3 H), 3.96 (s, 3 H); MS-(+)-ion M+1 = 296.09

d) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (3b)

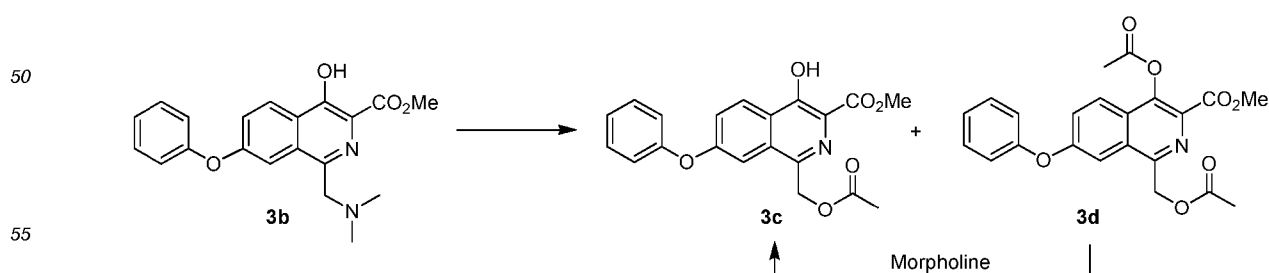
[0247]



[0248] A flask was charged with **3a** (29.5 g) and acetic acid (44.3 g ± 5%), and then stirred. Bis-dimethylaminomethane (12.8 g ± 2%) was slowly added. The mixture was heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained until reaction completion. The reaction product was evaluated by MS, HPLC and ¹H NMR. ¹H NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 11.7 (s, 1 H), 8.38 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.61 (dd, J = 9.0, 2.7 Hz, 1 H), 7.49 (m, 3 H), 7.21 (m, 3H), 5.34 (s, 2 H), 3.97 (s, 3 H), 1.98 (s, 3 H); MS-(+)-ion M+1 = 368.12.

e) Preparation of methyl 1-((acetoxy)methyl)-4-hydroxy-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (3c)

[0249]



[0250] The solution of **3b** from a) above was cooled below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (28.6 g ± 3.5 %)

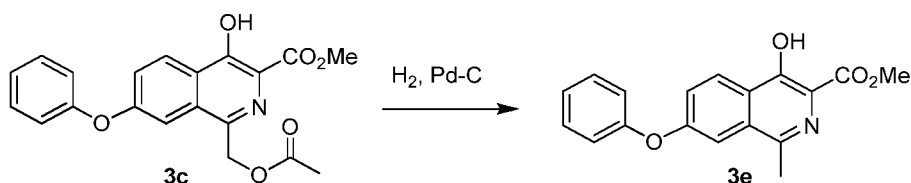
was added to maintain temperature below 50 °C. The resulting mixture was heated to 100 ± 5 °C until reaction completion.

[0251] The solution of **3c** and **3d** from above was cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C. Water (250 mL) was slowly added. The mixture was then cooled to below 20 ± 5 °C and filtered. The wet cake was washed with water (3 x 50 mL) and added to a new flask. Dichloromethane (90 mL) and water (30 mL) were added, and the resulting mixture was stirred.

[0252] The organic layer was added to a flask and cooled 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine was added and the mixture was stirred until reaction completion. Solvent was replaced with acetone/methanol mixture. After cooling, compound **3c** precipitated and was filtered, washed and dried in an oven (Yield: 81 %, HPLC: >99.7%). ¹H NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 11.6 (s, 1 H), 8.31 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.87 (d, J = 2.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.49 (m, 3 H), 7.24 (m, 3 H), 3.95 (s, 3 H), 3.68 (s, 2H), 2.08 (s, 6 H); MS-(+)-ion M+1 = 357.17.

f) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**3e**)

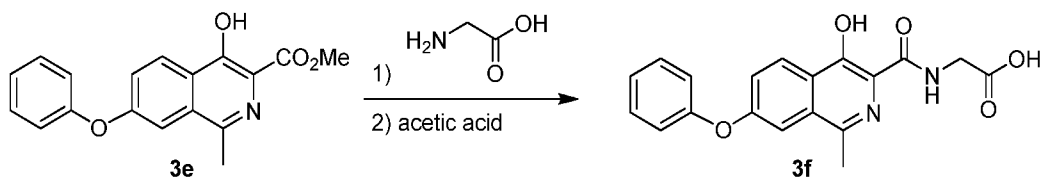
[0253]



[0254] A reactor was charged with **3c** (16.0 g), Pd/C (2.08 g), anhydrous Na₂CO₃ (2.56 g) and ethyl acetate (120 mL). The flask was vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask was then pressurized with hydrogen and stirred at about 60 °C until completion of reaction. The flask was cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and mixture was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated. Methanol was added. The mixture was stirred and then cooled. Product precipitated and was filtered and dried in an oven (Yield: 90%, HPLC: 99.7%).

g) Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid (**3f**)

[0255]



[0256] 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid was prepared from **3e** according to the following procedure.

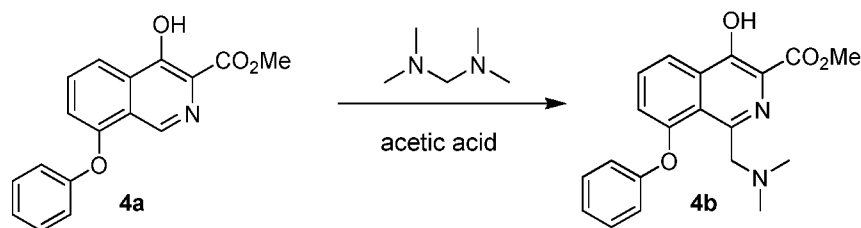
[0257] A pressure flask was charged with **3e** (30.92 g), glycine (22.52 g), methanol (155 mL), sodium methoxide solution (64.81 g) and sealed (as an alternative, sodium glycinate was used in place of glycine and sodium methoxide). The reaction was heated to about 110 °C until reaction was complete. The mixture was cooled, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and washed with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was removed and to the resulting aqueous layer an acetic acid (18.0 g) solution was added. The suspension was stirred at room temperature, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3 x 30 mL), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2 x 20 mL), and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid (Yield: 86.1%, HPLC: 99.8%).

EXAMPLE 4

Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**4b**)

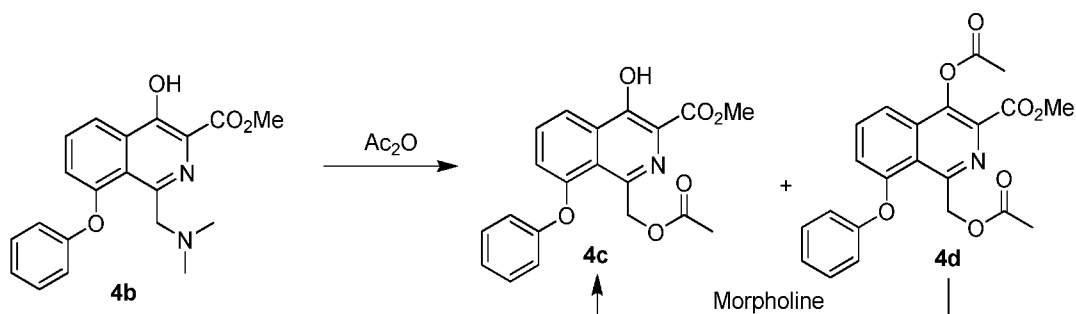
[0258]



[0259] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **4a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm 5\%$). The suspension of **4a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **4a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 ± 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-((acetoxymethyl)-4-hydroxy-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**4c**)

[0260]



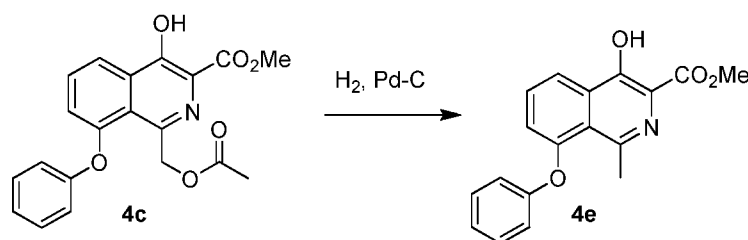
[0261] The solution of **4b** from Example 4a) can be cooled to below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50 °C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, 20-25 °C temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine **4b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 100 ± 5 °C for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **4b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0262] **4d** can be converted to **4c** by the following procedure. The solution of **4c** and **4d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30 °C, the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at 20 ± 5 °C for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0263] **4c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at 5 ± 5 °C for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **4d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **4c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

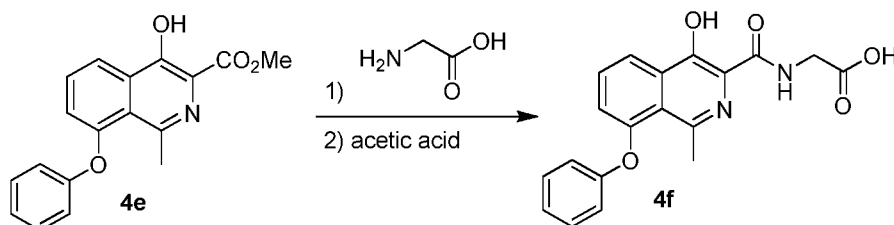
c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**4e**)

[0264]



[0265] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **4c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na_2CO_3 (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60 °C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (**4c** <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

d) Preparation of 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid (**4f**)



[0267] 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid is prepared from **4e** according to the following procedure.

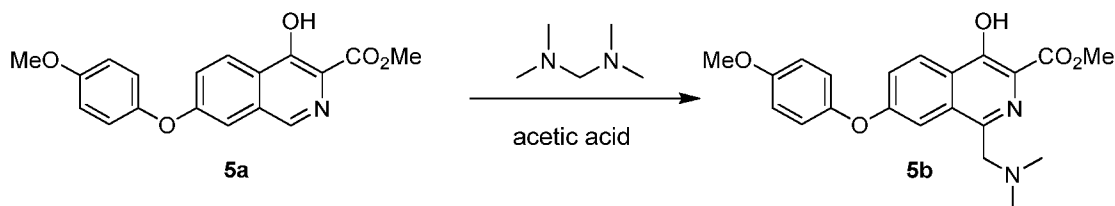
[0268] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **4e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents $NaOCH_3$) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **4e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-(4-hydroxy-1-methyl-8-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxamido)acetic acid..

EXAMPLE 5

Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5b**)**

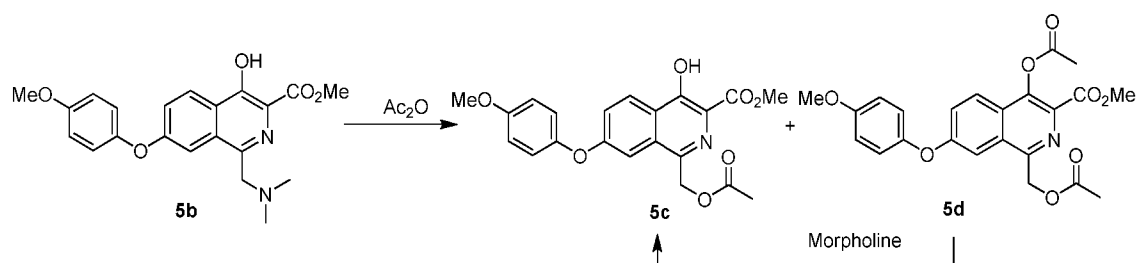
[0269]



[0270] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **5a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm$ 5%). The suspension of **5a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **5a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 ± 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-((acetoxy)methyl)-4-hydroxy-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**5c**)

[0271]



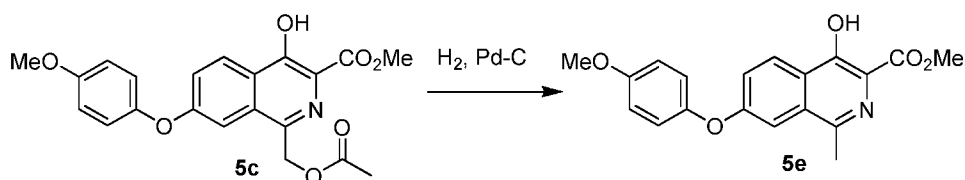
[0272] The solution of **5b** from Example 5a) can be cooled to below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50 °C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, 20-25 °C temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine or **5b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 100 ± 5 °C for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **5b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0273] **5d** can be converted to **5c** by the following procedure. The solution of **5c** and **5d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30 °C, the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at 20 ± 5 °C for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0274] **5c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at 5 ± 5 °C for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **5d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **5c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**5e**)

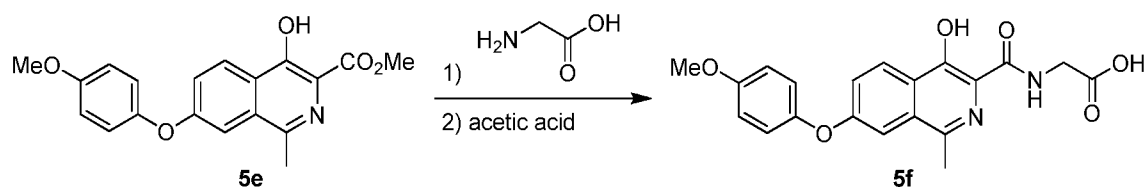
[0275]



[0276] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **5c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na_2CO_3 (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60 °C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (**5c** <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

d) Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid (**5f**)

[0277]



[0278] 2-[4-Hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid is prepared from **5e** according to the following procedure.

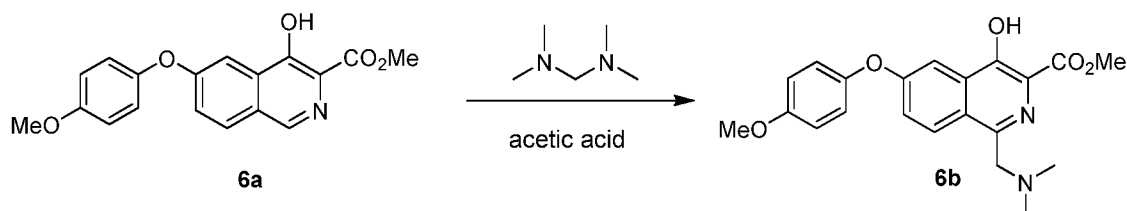
[0279] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **5e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents NaOCH_3) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **5e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid.

EXAMPLE 6

Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**6b**)

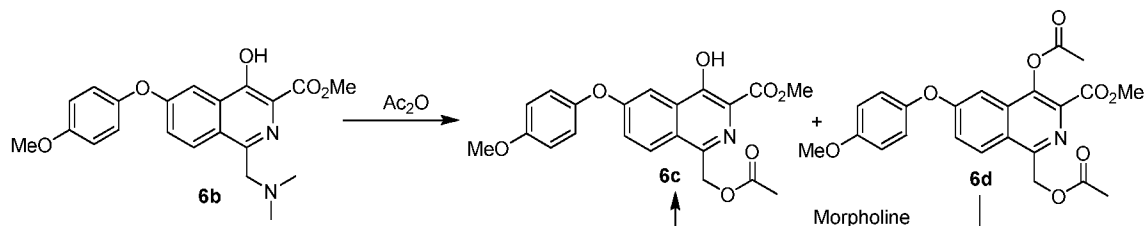
[0280]



[0281] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **6a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm$ 5%). The suspension of **6a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **6a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 ± 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-((acetoxymethyl)-4-hydroxy-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (6c**)**

[0282]



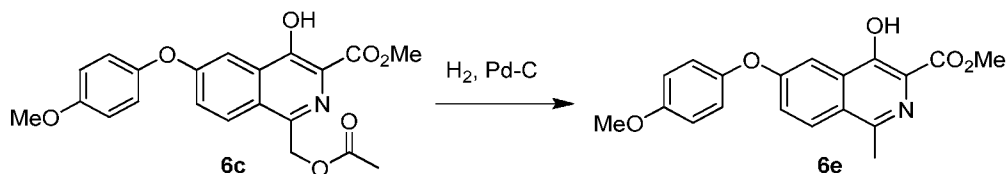
[0283] The solution of **6b** from Example 6a) can be cooled to below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50 °C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, 20-25 °C temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine or **6b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 100 ± 5 °C for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **6b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0284] **6d** can be converted to **6c** by the following procedure. The solution of **6c** and **6d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30 °C, the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at 20 ± 5 °C for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0285] **6c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at 5 ± 5 °C for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **6d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **6c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (6e**)**

[0286]

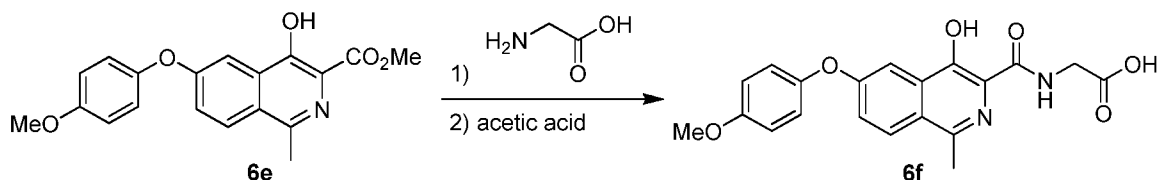


[0287] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **6c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na_2CO_3 (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60 °C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (**6c** <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and

dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

d) Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid (6f)

[0288]



[0289] 2-[4-Hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid is prepared from **6e** according to the following procedure.

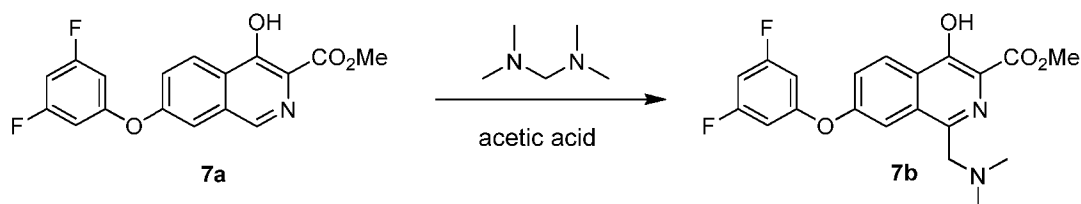
[0290] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **6e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents NaOCH_3) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **6e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid.

EXAMPLE 7

Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (7b)

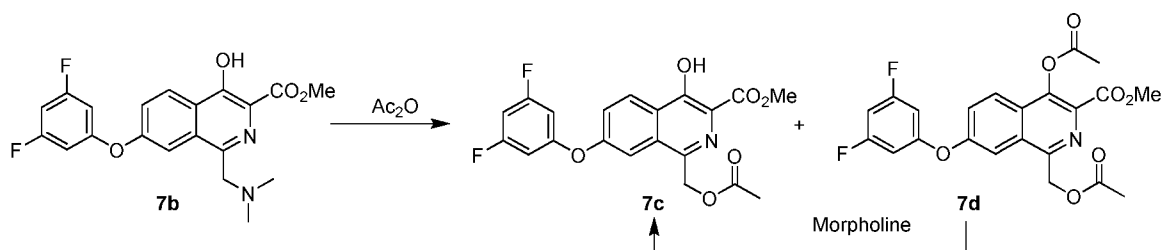
[0291]



[0292] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **7a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm 5\%$). The suspension of **7a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 ± 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **7a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 ± 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-(acetoxymethyl)-4-hydroxy-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (7c)

[0293]



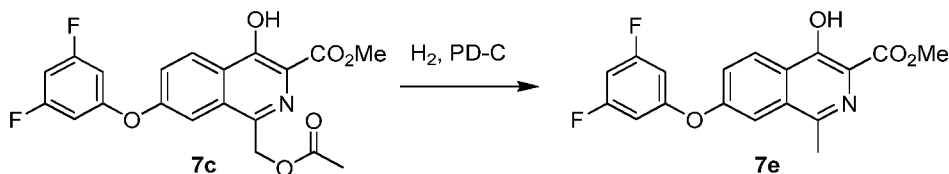
[0294] The solution of **7b** from Example 7a) can be cooled to below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50 °C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, 20-25 °C temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine or **7b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 100 ± 5 °C for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **7b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0295] **7d** can be converted to **7c** by the following procedure. The solution of **7c** and **7d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30 °C, the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at 20 ± 5 °C for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0296] **7c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at 5 ± 5 °C for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **7d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **7c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**7e**)

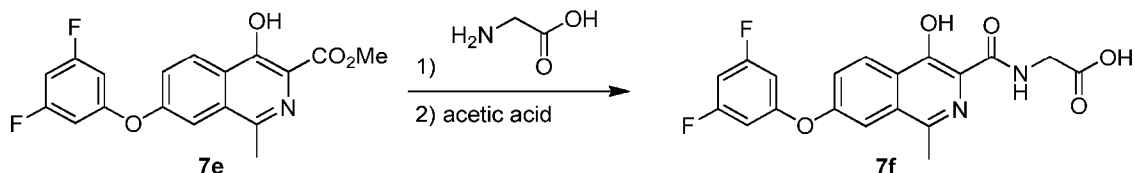
[0297]



[0298] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **7c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na₂CO₃ (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60 °C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (**7c** <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

d) Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid (**7f**)

[0299]



[0300] 2-[4-Hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid is prepared from **7e** according to the following procedure.

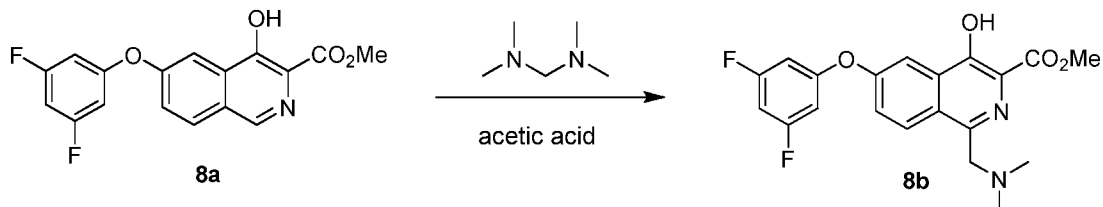
[0301] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **7e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents NaOCH₃) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **7e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-7-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid.

EXAMPLE 8

Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid

a) Preparation of methyl 1-((dimethylamino)methyl)-4-hydroxy-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**8b**)

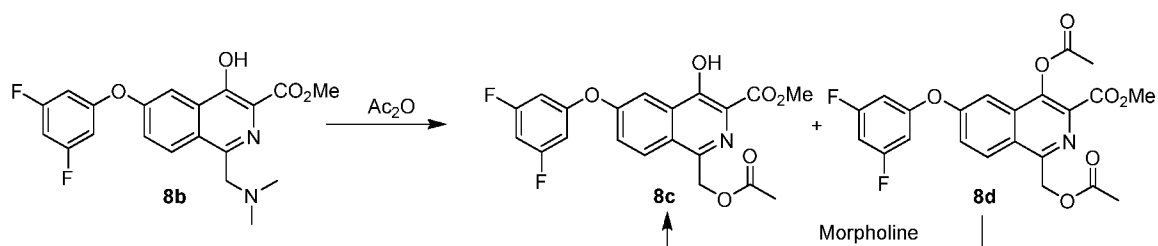
[0302]



[0303] A round bottom flask fitted with thermocouple and condenser can be charged with **8a** and acetic acid (about 7 molar equivalents $\pm$ 5%). The suspension of **8a** in acetic acid can be stirred vigorously with magnetic stirring (note: overhead stirring should be done for larger scale work). A slight excess of bis-dimethylaminomethane (about 1.25 molar equivalents) can then be slowly added to the mixture [Note: Reaction is slightly exothermic, 15-20 °C temperature rise can be observed]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 55 $\pm$ 5 °C and maintained for at least 8 h. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **8a** is greater than 0.5%, the reaction can be stirred for additional 2 hours at 55 $\pm$ 5 °C and reevaluated by HPLC.

b) Preparation of methyl 1-((acetoxy)methyl)-4-hydroxy-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**8c**)

[0304]



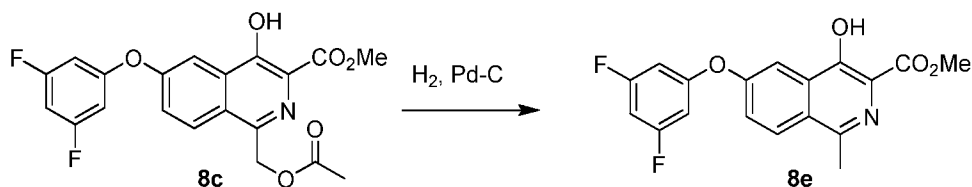
[0305] The solution of **8b** from Example 8a) can be cooled to below 25 °C, at which time acetic anhydride (about 3 molar equivalents) can be added slowly at a temperature below 50 °C [Note: Reaction is exothermic, 20-25 °C temperature rise can be observed. Rate of addition is important to control the exothermic reaction between acetic anhydride and dimethyl amine or **8b**. Excess heat generated will cause unsafe rapid evolution of gaseous dimethyl amine]. After the addition is complete, the mixture can be heated to 100 ± 5 °C for 20-24 hours. The reaction can then be evaluated by HPLC. If **8b** is in an amount greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional 2 hours and then reevaluated by HPLC.

[0306] **8d** can be converted to **8c** by the following procedure. The solution of **8c** and **8d** from the above procedure can be cooled to less than 65 ± 5 °C with good mixing. If the reaction temperature goes below 30 °C, the reaction may solidify. Water can be slowly and steadily added (the first half can be added over 1 hour and the rest added over 30 minutes). The mixture can then be cooled and stirred at 20 ± 5 °C for at least 3 hours, at which time the mixture can be filtered and the wet cake washed with water (3X) and added to a round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer. Dichloromethane and water (3:1 by volume) can be added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The dichloromethane can be separated (without including the interface or aqueous layer) and the solution evaluated by HPLC.

[0307] **8c** can be further purified according to the following procedure. The above solution can be added to a flask, fitted with mechanical stirrer, and cooled to 5 ± 5 °C. Morpholine can be added and the mixture stirred at 5 ± 5 °C for 30-60 minutes and evaluated by HPLC. If the amount of **8d** is greater than 2%, the reaction can be stirred for an additional hour. Once the reaction reached completion, **8c** can be precipitated from cold acetone/methanol solution, filtered, washed and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxylate (**8e**)

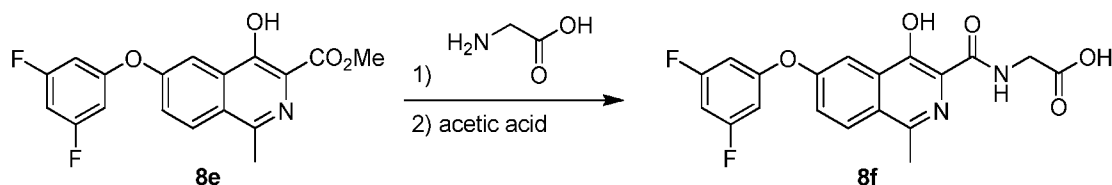
[0308]



[0309] A glass lined Parr pressure reactor vessel equipped with a 4-blade impeller can be charged with **8c**, Pd/C (about 0.4 to 0.5 molar equivalents), anhydrous Na₂CO₃ (about 0.5 molar equivalents), and ethyl acetate. The flask can then be vacuum-purged with nitrogen (3X) and vacuum-purged with hydrogen (3X). The flask can then be pressurized with hydrogen to set point 60 psi and stirred at 60 °C for 6-8 hrs until completion of reaction (**8c** <0.5%). The flask can then be cooled to 20-25 °C, the pressure released to ambient, the head space purged with nitrogen three times and filtered through glass microfiber filter paper. The filtrate can be concentrated and precipitated from cold methanol and dried under vacuum at 50 ± 5 °C.

d) Preparation of 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido] acetic acid (**8f**)

[0310]



[0311] 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid is prepared from **8e** according to the following procedure.

[0312] A pressure glass reaction flask which included top threads for a screw cap lid can be fitted with a magnetic stirrer, charged with **8e**, glycine (about 3 molar equivalents), methanol, and a sodium methoxide solution (with 1.2 molar equivalents NaOCH₃) and sealed. The reaction can then be heated to 110 °C for at least 6 h during which time the reaction forms a yellow suspension. The reaction can then be cooled to 20-25 °C and evaluated by HPLC. The reaction can be continued until less than 1% **8e** remains as determined by HPLC, filtered, washed with methanol, dried under vacuum, dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities to below 0.1 %. The ethyl acetate can be removed and an acetic acid solution (with 3 molar equivalents acetic acid) can be added over one hour. The suspension can be stirred at room temperature for at least 3 hours, filtered, and the solid washed with water (3X), cold acetone (5-10 °C, 2X) and evaluated for impurities by HPLC. If acetone removable impurities are present, the flask can be charged with acetone and refluxed for at least 8 h, slowly cooled to 5-10 °C, stirred for at least 2-3 h, filtered, washed with cold acetone (5-10 °C, 3X) and dried under vacuum to obtain 2-[4-hydroxy-1-methyl-6-(3,5-difluoro-phenoxy)-isoquinoline-3-carboxamido]acetic acid.

EXAMPLE 9

Biological Testing

[0313] The compounds and methods of the invention can be used for the synthesis of various isoquinoline compounds. Such compounds are known to be useful for inhibiting HIF hydroxylase activity, thereby increasing the stability and/or activity of hypoxia inducible factor (HIF), and can be used to treat and prevent HIF-associated conditions and disorders (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 7,323,475, U.S. Publication No. 2007/0004627, U.S. Publication No. 2006/0276477, and U.S. Publication No. 2007/0259960, incorporated by reference herein).

[0314] The biological activity of exemplary substituted isoquinoline compounds may be assessed using any conventionally known methods. In particular embodiments, cells derived from animal tissues, preferably human tissues, capable of expressing erythropoietin when stimulated by compounds of the invention are cultured for the *in vitro* production of endogenous proteins. Cells contemplated for use in such methods include, but are not limited to, cells derived from hepatic, hematopoietic, renal, and neural tissues.

[0315] Cell culture techniques are generally available in the art and include any method that maintains cell viability and facilitates expression of endogenous proteins. Cells are typically cultured in a growth medium optimized for cell growth, viability, and protein production. Cells may be in suspension or attached to a substrate, and medium may be supplied in batch feed or continuous flow-through regimens. Compounds of the invention are added to the culture medium at levels that stimulate erythropoietin production without compromising cell viability. Erythropoietin produced by the cells is secreted into the culture medium. The medium is then collected and the erythropoietin is purified using methods known to those of skill in the art. (See, e.g., Lai et al. (1987) U.S. Pat. No. 4,667,016; and Egrie (1985) U.S. Pat. No. 4,558,006.)

[0316] Suitable assay methods are well known in the art. The following are presented only as examples and are not intended to be limiting.

Cell-based HIF α stabilization assay

[0317] Human cells (e.g., Hep3B cells from hepatocellular tissue) derived from various tissues were separately seeded into 35 mm culture dishes, and grown at 37 °C, 20 % O₂, 5 % CO₂ in standard culture medium, e.g., DMEM (Dulbecco's modification of Eagle's medium), 10 % FBS (fetal bovine serum). When cell layers reach confluence, the media was replaced with OPTI-MEM media (Invitrogen Life Technologies, Carlsbad CA), and cell layers were incubated for approximately 24 hours in 20 % O₂, 5 % CO₂ at 37 °C. Compound or 0.013 % DMSO (dimethyl sulfoxide) was then added to existing medium and incubation was continued overnight.

[0318] Following incubation, the media was removed, centrifuged, and stored for analysis (see Cell-based VEGF and EPO assays below). The cells were washed two times in cold phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and then lysed in 1 mL of 10 mM Tris (pH 7.4), 1 mM EDTA, 150 mM NaCl, 0.5 % IGEPAL (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis MO), and a protease inhibitor mix (Roche Molecular Biochemicals) for 15 minutes on ice. Cell lysates were centrifuged at 3,000 xg for 5

minutes at 4 °C, and the cytosolic fractions (supernatant) were collected. The nuclei (pellet) were resuspended and lysed in 100 μ L of 20 mM HEPES (pH 7.2), 400 mM NaCl, 1 mM EDTA, 1 mM dithiothreitol, and a protease mix (Roche Molecular Biochemicals), centrifuged at 13,000 xg for 5 minutes at 4 °C, and the nuclear protein fractions (supernatant) were collected.

[0319] The Nuclear protein fractions collected were analyzed for HIF-1 α using a QUANTIKINE immunoassay (R&D Systems, Inc., Minneapolis MN) according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Cell-based EPO assay

[0320] Hep3B cells (human hepatocellular carcinoma cells from ATCC, cat # HB-8064) were plated at 25,000 cells per well 96 well plates. The next day, the cells were washed once with DMEM (Cellgro, cat # 10-013-CM) + 0.5% fetal bovine serum (Cellgro, cat # 35-010-C) and incubated with various concentrations of compound or vehicle control (0.15% DMSO) in DMEM + 0.5% fetal bovine serum for 72 hours. Cell free culture supernatants were generated by transfer to a conical bottom 96 well plate and centrifugation for 5 minutes at 2000rpm. The supernatant was quantitated for EPO using a human EPO ELISA kit (R&D Systems, cat # DEP 00).

[0321] The EPO values for the compounds reported herein (e.g., Table 1) are the measured value for cells plus compound minus the value for the vehicle control for the same cell preparation. The EPO values for the vehicle control for the cell preparations used in experiments reported herein varied from 0-12.5 mIU/ml.

HIF-PH assay

[0322] Ketoglutaric acid α -[1-¹⁴C]-sodium salt, alpha-ketoglutaric acid sodium salt, and HPLC purified peptide were obtained from commercial sources, e.g., Perkin-Elmer (Wellesley MA), Sigma-Aldrich, and SynPep Corp. (Dublin CA), respectively. Peptides for use in the assay were fragments of HIF α as described above or as disclosed in International Publication WO 2005/118836, incorporated by reference herein. For example, a HIF peptide for use in the HIF-PH assay was [methoxycoumarin]-DLDLEALAPYIPADDDFQL-amide. HIF-PH, e.g., HIF-PH2 (also known as EGLN1 or PHD2), was expressed in, e.g., insect Hi5 cells, and partially purified, e.g., through a SP ion exchange chromatography column. Enzyme activity was determined by capturing ¹⁴CO₂ using an assay described by Kivirikko and Myllyla (1982, Methods Enzymol. 82:245-304). Assay reactions contained 50 mM HEPES (pH 7.4), 100 μ M α -ketoglutaric acid sodium salt, 0.30 μ Ci/mL α -ketoglutaric acid α -[1-¹⁴C]-sodium salt, 40 μ M FeSO₄, 1 mM ascorbate, 1541.8 units/mL Catalase, with or without 50 μ M peptide substrate and various concentrations of compound of the invention. Reactions were initiated by addition of HIF-PH enzyme.

[0323] The peptide-dependent percent turnover was calculated by subtracting percent turnover in the absence of peptide from percent turnover in the presence of substrate peptide. Percent inhibition and IC₅₀ were calculated using peptide-dependent percent turnover at given inhibitor concentrations. Calculation of IC₅₀ values for each inhibitor was conducted using GraFit software (Erithacus Software Ltd., Surrey UK). The results were summarized in Table 1.

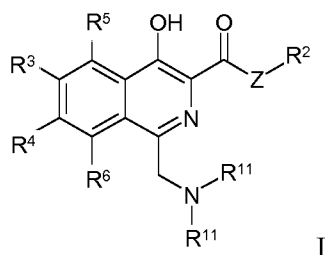
[0324] Table 1 below was intended to demonstrate the pharmacological utility of exemplary substituted isoquinoline compounds. By inhibiting HIF prolyl hydroxylase enzymes, substituted isoquinoline compounds stabilize HIF α , which then combines with HIF β to form an active transcription factor that increases expression of numerous genes involved in response to hypoxic and ischemic conditions, including erythropoietin (EPO).

Table 1.

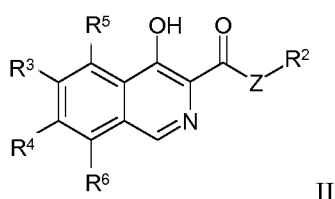
Example No.	Compound No.	IC ₅₀ PHD2 (μ M)	Cell EPO* (mIU/ml)
1	1f	7.9	98.6
2	2f	3.5	78
3	3f	2.1	182
4	4f	1.4	52
5	5f	2.2	209
6	6f	5.2	191
7	7f	2.2	225
8	8f	not determined	105
*Cell EPO measured at 30 μ M compound in DMSO compared to DMSO only control			

Claims

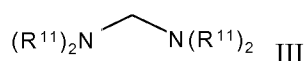
1. A method of making a compound of formula I or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



the method comprising contacting a compound of formula II:



with a compound of formula III:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula I; wherein

Z is O, NR¹, or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

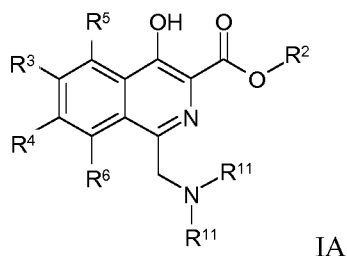
R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and

R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹⁰ and

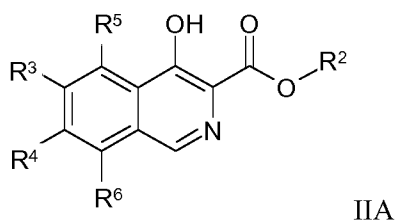
R¹³, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; and

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl.

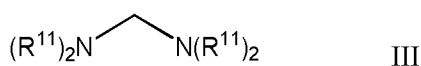
2. The method according to claim 1 for making a compound of formula IA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising contacting a compound of formula IIA:



with a compound of formula III:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IA; wherein

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂- then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ and R¹³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

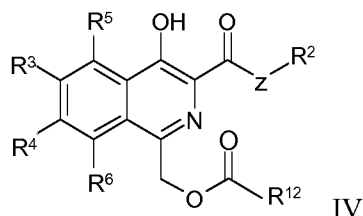
R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl.

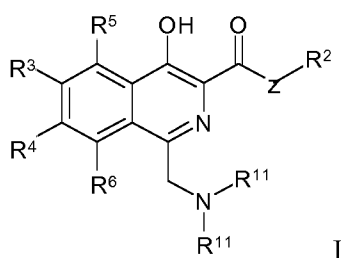
3. The method of claim 1 or claim 2, wherein

- (i) the reaction conditions comprise an acid, such as glacial acetic acid; or
- (ii) the reaction is conducted at a temperature greater than about 30 °C, such as from about 50 °C to about 60 °C; or
- (iii) R¹¹ is C₁ to C₄ alkyl.

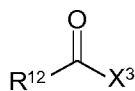
4. A method of making a compound of formula IV or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



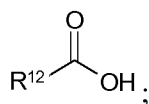
comprising contacting a compound of formula I:



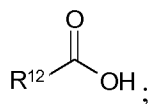
with a compound of formula



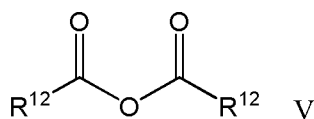
followed by a compound of formula



a compound of formula R¹²-X³ followed by a compound of formula



or a compound of formula V:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV; wherein

Z is O, NR¹ or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ and R¹³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

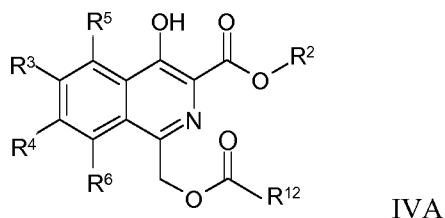
R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl;

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl;

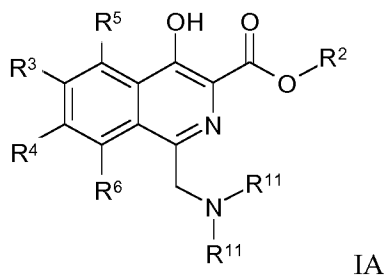
each R¹² is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or when two R¹² are present, two R¹² together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl; and

X³ is halo.

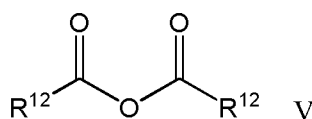
5. The method according to claim 4 for making a compound of formula IVA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising contacting a compound of formula IA:



with a compound of formula V:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVA; wherein

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂- then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ and R¹³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl;

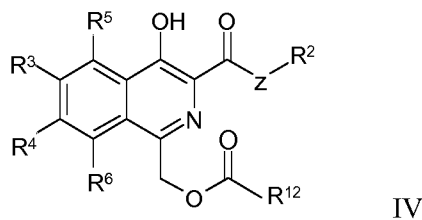
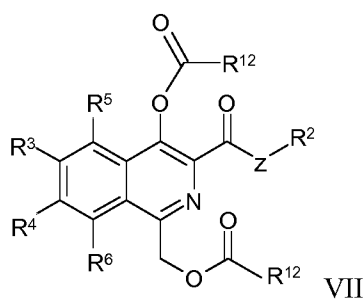
each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl; and

each R¹² is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or two R¹² together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl.

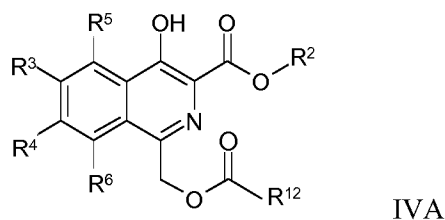
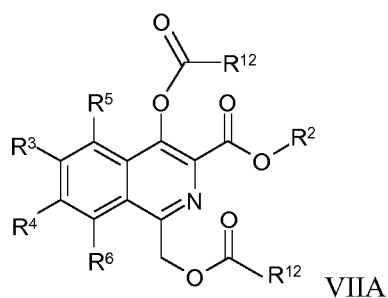
6. The method of claim 4 or claim 5, wherein

- (i) the reaction conditions comprise a compound of formula V; or
- (ii) the reaction is conducted under an inert atmosphere, for example under a nitrogen atmosphere; or
- (iii) the reaction conditions are anhydrous reaction conditions; or
- (iv) the reaction is conducted at a temperature greater than about 30 °C, such as at a temperature of about 100 °C; or
- (v) R¹¹ and R¹² are C₁ to C₄ alkyl, such as methyl; or
- (vi) the reaction conditions comprise a compound of formula V where R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; and wherein the reaction is conducted at a temperature of about 100 °C, optionally under a nitrogen atmosphere.

7. The method of claim 4 or claim 5, wherein the reaction conditions further comprise converting a compound of formula VII to a compound of formula IV;



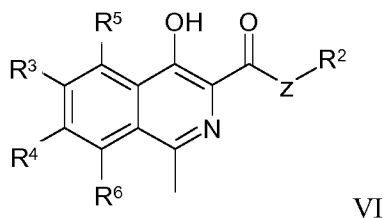
or converting a compound of formula VIIA to a compound of formula IVA.



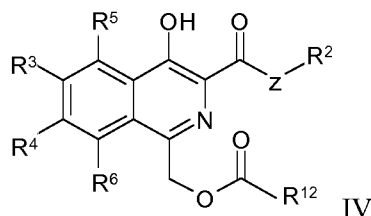
and optionally wherein

- (i) the reaction conditions comprise an amine, such as morpholine; or
- (ii) the reaction is conducted in dichloromethane; or
- (iii) the reaction is conducted at a temperature below 25 °C, such as from about 0 °C to about 10 °C; or
- (iv) the reaction conditions comprise morpholine; and the reaction is conducted in dichloromethane and at a temperature of from about 0 °C to about 10 °C.

8. A method of making a compound of formula VI or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising converting a compound of formula IV:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VI; wherein

Z is O, NR¹ or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

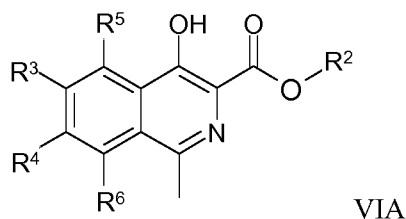
R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

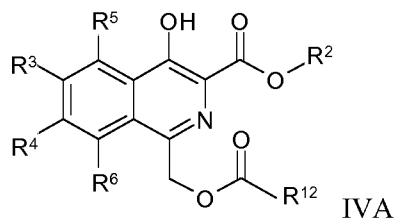
each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted hetero-

cyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen;
 R^9 and R^{13} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; and
 R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted
heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and
each R^{12} is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

9. The method according to claim 8 for making a compound of formula VIA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:



comprising converting a compound of formula IVA:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VIA; wherein

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$ where n is 0, 1, or 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$ where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$ or $-NR^9-$ where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R^3 , R^4 together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and $-X^2R^{10}$ where X^2 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$ or $-NR^{13}-$ where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X^2 is $-NR^{13}-$, then R^{13} and R^{10} , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen;

R^9 and R^{13} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; and
 R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl; and
each R^{12} is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

10. The method of claim 8 or claim 9, wherein

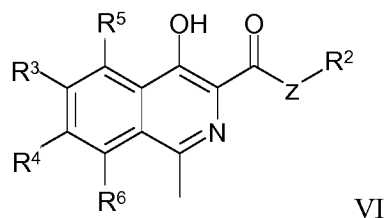
- (i) the reaction conditions comprise hydrogen; or
- (ii) the reaction conditions comprise a base, for example sodium carbonate;
- (iii) the reaction conditions comprise ethyl acetate;
- (iv) the reaction conditions comprise a catalyst, for example Pd/C; or
- (v) the reaction conditions comprise a condition under pressure, for example a condition under pressure at about 60 psi; or

(vi) the reaction conditions comprise hydrogen, sodium carbonate, ethyl acetate, Pd/C, and a condition under pressure; or

(vii) the reaction conditions comprise hydrogen, sodium carbonate, ethyl acetate, Pd/C, and a condition under pressure at about 60 psi;

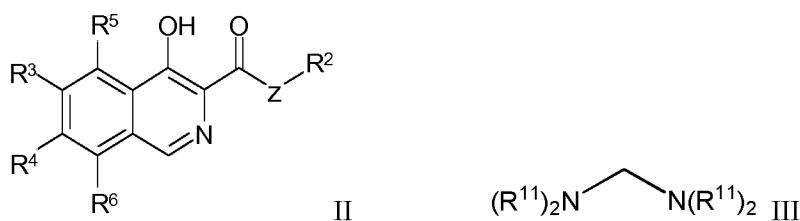
(viii) R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl, for example methyl.

11. A method of making a compound of formula VI or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

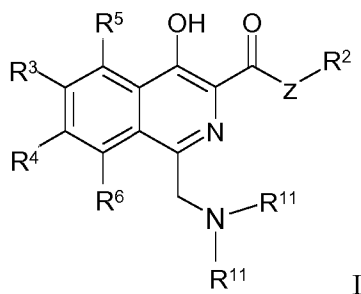


the method comprising the steps of:

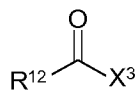
a) contacting a compound of formula II with a compound of formula III



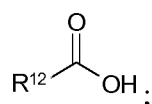
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula I:



b) contacting a compound of formula I with a compound of formula



followed by a compound of formula



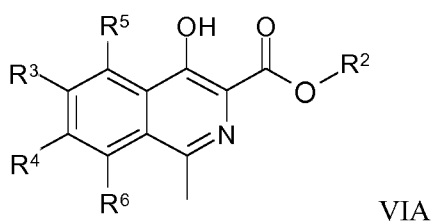
a compound of formula R¹²-X³ followed by a compound of formula

$$\text{R}^{12}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^{12} \quad \text{V}$$
O=C(R2)C1=C(O)C2=C(N1)C(=O)OC(=O)R12C3=C(C=C(C(=C3)R3)R4)C(=C(C=C2)R5)R6 IVO=C(R12)OC1=NC(=C2C(=C1)C(=C(R3)C(=C(R4)C=C2R5)C(=O)OC(=O)R2)OC(=O)R12)C VII

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and sub-

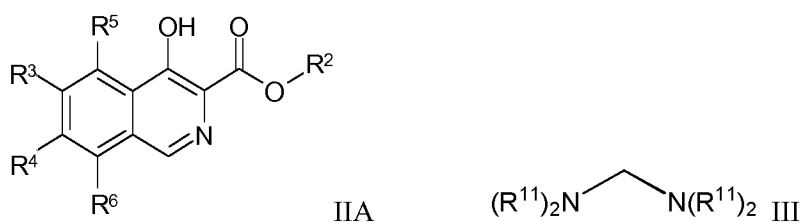
stituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$ then R^8 is not hydrogen;
 R^9 and R^{13} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; and
 R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl;
 each R^{11} is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R^{11} together with the nitrogen atom
 to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl;
 each R^{12} is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or
 when two R^{12} are present, two R^{12} together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8
 membered heterocyclyl; and
 X^3 is halo.

12. The method according to claim 11 for making a compound of formula VIA or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

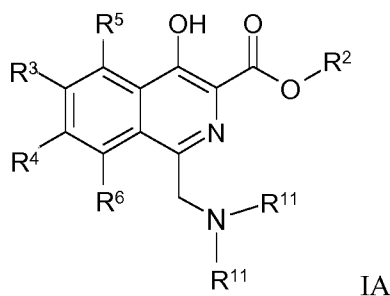


the method comprising the steps of:

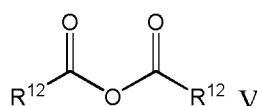
a) contacting a compound of formula IIA with a compound of formula III



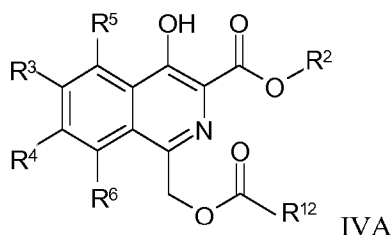
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IA:



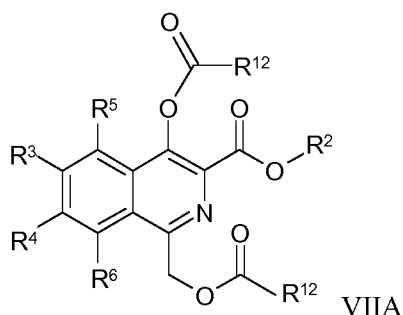
b) contacting a compound of formula IA with a compound of formula V



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVA:



c) optionally converting a compound of formula VIIA:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IV A; and

d) converting a compound of formula IV A under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VIA;

wherein

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ and R¹³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; and

R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl;

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl; and

each R¹² is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl, or two R¹² together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl.

13. The method of claim 11 or claim 12, wherein

(i) the reaction conditions of steps a) and b) comprise an acid; or

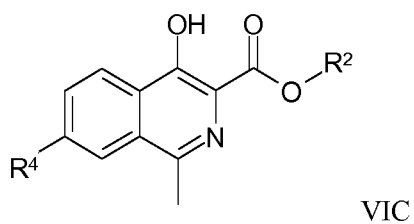
(ii) R¹¹ and R¹² are C₁ to C₄ alkyl; or

(iii) R¹¹ and R¹² are C₁ to C₄ alkyl, and R³, R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen; or

(iv) R¹¹ and R¹² are C₁ to C₄ alkyl, and R⁴, R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen; or

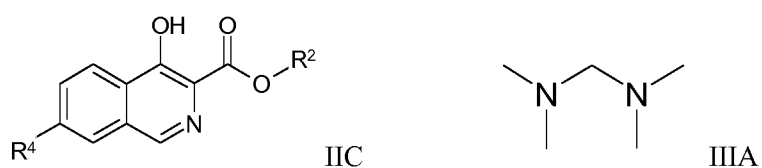
(v) R¹¹ and R¹² are methyl.

14. The method according to claim 11 for making a compound of formula VIC or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

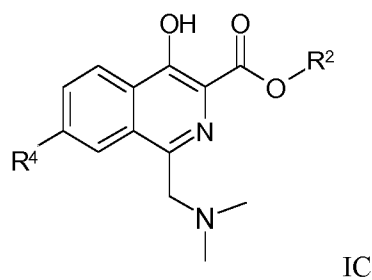


comprising the steps of:

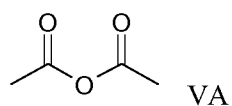
a) contacting a compound of formula IIC with a compound of formula IIIA



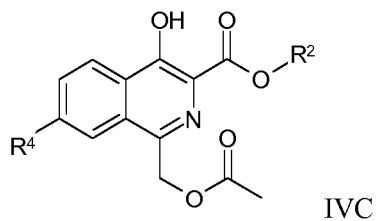
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IC:



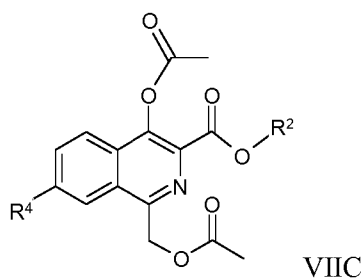
b) contacting a compound of formula IC with a compound of formula VA



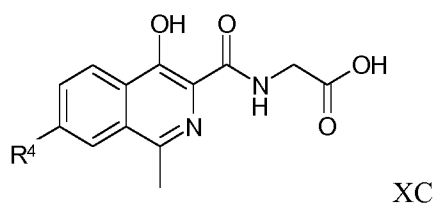
under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVC:



c) optionally converting a compound of formula VIIC:



under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVC; and
 d) converting a compound of formula IVC under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VIC; and optionally
 e) contacting a compound of formula VIC with glycine under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula XC:



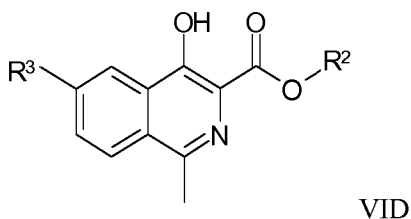
or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;
 wherein

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R⁴ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2,;

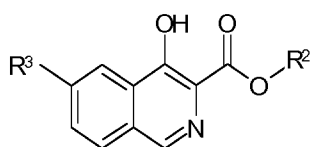
each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and
 each R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl.

15. The method according to claim 11 for making a compound of formula VID or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof:

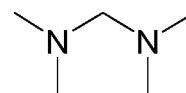


comprising the steps of:

a) contacting a compound of formula IID with a compound of formula IIIA

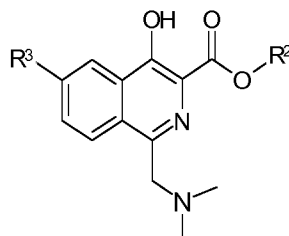


IID



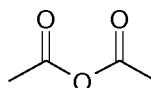
IIIA

under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula ID:



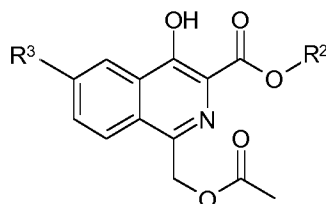
ID

b) contacting a compound of formula ID with a compound of formula VA



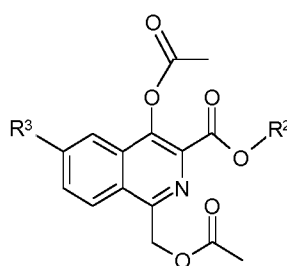
VA

under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVD:



IVD

c) optionally converting a compound of formula VIID:

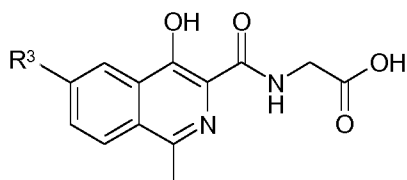


VIID

under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula IVD; and

d) converting a compound of formula IVD under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula VID; and optionally

e) contacting a compound of formula VID with glycine under reaction conditions sufficient to produce a compound of formula XD:



XD

or a stereoisomer or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;
wherein

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and

each R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl.

16. The method of claim 14 or 15, wherein

- (i) R² is hydrogen and R⁴ is phenoxy; or
- (ii) R² is hydrogen and R⁴ is 4-methoxyphenoxy; or
- (iii) R² is hydrogen and R⁴ is 3,5-difluorophenoxy.

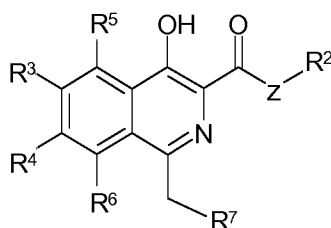
17. The method of any one of claims 11, 12, 14 or 15, wherein

- (i) the reaction conditions of step a) comprise an acid, for example glacial acetic acid; or
- (ii) step a) is conducted at a temperature greater than about 30 °C, for example at a temperature of from about 50 °C to about 60 °C; or
- (iii) step b) is conducted at a temperature greater than about 30 °C, for example at a temperature of about 100 °C; or
- (iv) the method comprises step c); or
- (v) the method comprises step c) and the reaction conditions of step c) comprise an amine, for example morpholine; or
- (vi) the method comprises step c) and step c) is conducted in dichloromethane; or
- (vii) the method comprises step c) and step c) is conducted at a temperature below about 25 °C, for example at a temperature of from about 0 °C to about 10 °C; or
- (viii) the reaction conditions of step d) comprise hydrogen; or
- (ix) the reaction conditions of step d) comprise a base, for example sodium carbonate; or
- (x) the reaction conditions of step d) comprise from about 0.5 to about 1 molar equivalents of sodium carbonate; or
- (xi) the reaction conditions of step d) comprise ethyl acetate; or
- (xii) the reaction conditions of step d) comprise a catalyst, for example Pd/C.

18. The method of any one of claims 1, 2, 11 or 12 wherein from about 1.1 to about 1.5 molar equivalents of the compound of formula III is used, or the method of claim 14 or 15 wherein from about 1.1 to about 1.5 molar equivalents of the compound of formula IIIA is used.

19. The method of any one of claims 4, 5, 11 or 12 wherein from about 2 to about 3 molar equivalents of the compound of formula V is used, or the method of claim 14 or 15 wherein from about 2 to about 3 molar equivalents of the compound of formula VA is used.

20. A compound of formula VIII:



VIII

wherein:

Z is O, NR¹ or S;

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group;

R⁷ is either -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) or -OC(O)R¹²;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ and R¹³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl;

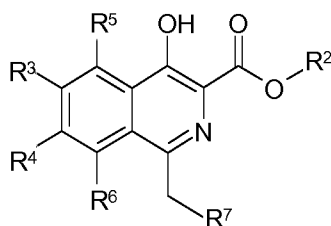
each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl; and

each R¹² is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl;

or a salt, ester, stereoisomer, or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;

provided that the compound is not 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanyliisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester.

21. The compound according to claim 20 of formula VIIIA:



VIIIA

wherein:

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰ where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR¹³- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or when X² is -NR¹³-, then R¹³ and R¹⁰, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound, can be joined to form a heterocyclyl or substituted heterocyclyl group; R⁷ is either -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) or -OC(O)R¹²;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ and R¹³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl;

each R¹¹ is independently selected from alkyl, benzyl and aryl, or two R¹¹ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4-8 membered heterocyclyl or a heteroaryl; and

each R¹² is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl;

or a salt, ester, stereoisomer, or mixture of stereoisomers thereof;

provided that the compound is not 1-dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenylsulfanylisquinoline-3-carboxylic acid butyl ester.

22. The compound of claim 20 or claim 21, wherein

(i) R² is unsubstituted alkyl; or

(ii) R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen; or

(iii) R² is selected from the group consisting of alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl; and

R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen;

(iv) R⁷ is -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) and R¹¹ is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; or

(v) R⁷ is -OC(O)R¹² and R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl;

(vi) R² is alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ where n is 0, 1, or 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸ where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n- or -NR⁹- where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R³, R⁴ together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen;

R⁷ is -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹);

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen;

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; and

each R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁ to C₄ alkyl and aryl; or

(vii) R² is alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from

the group consisting of cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, and heteroaryl;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$ where n is 0, 1, or 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$ where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$ or $-NR^9-$ where n is 0, 1, or 2, or R^3 , R^4 together with the carbon atom pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl;

R^5 and R^6 are hydrogen;

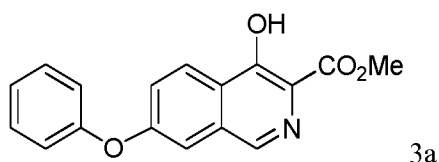
R^7 is $-OC(O)R^{12}$;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; and

each R^{12} is independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclyl.

23. A compound that is 4-hydroxy-7-phenoxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester (3a):



24. The method of any one of claims 1, 4, or 11 wherein R^1 is hydrogen.

25. The method of any one of claims 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11, 12, 14 or 15 wherein R^2 is hydrogen or alkyl.

26. The method of any one of claims 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11 or 12, wherein

(i) R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$;

where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl; or

(ii) R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$; where

X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^8 is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R^9 is hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl; or

(iii) R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $-X^1R^8$; where X^1 is oxygen, and R^8 is aryl or substituted aryl; or

(iv) R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and $-X^2R^{10}$;

where X^2 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^{13}-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^{10} is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or

(v) R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $-X^2R^{10}$; where X^2 is oxygen, and R^{10} is aryl or substituted aryl; or

(vi) R^5 and R^6 are hydrogen; or

(vii) R^2 is hydrogen or alkyl;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$;

where X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X^1 is $-SO-$ or $-SO_2-$, then R^8 is not hydrogen; and R^9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl; and

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and $-X^2R^{10}$; where X^2 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^{13}-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^{10} is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or

(viii) R^2 is hydrogen or alkyl;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, and $-X^1R^8$; where

X^1 is oxygen, $-S(O)_n-$, or $-NR^9-$;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R^8 is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R^9 is hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl; and

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $-X^2R^{10}$; where X^2 is oxygen, and R^{10} is aryl or substituted aryl; or

(ix) R^2 is hydrogen or alkyl;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $-X^1R^8$; where X^1 is oxygen, and R^8 is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R^5 and R^6 are hydrogen.

27. The method of any one of claims 1, 2, 4, 5, 11 or 12, wherein

(i) R^{11} is C_1 to C_4 alkyl; or

(ii) R^{11} is methyl.

28. The method of any one of claims 4, 5, 8, 9, 11 or 12, wherein

- (i) R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; or
- (ii) R¹² is methyl.

29. The method of claim 7, wherein

- (i) R¹ is hydrogen; or
- (ii) R¹ is hydrogen or alkyl; or
- (iii) R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸;

where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl; or

- (iv) R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where

X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R⁹ is hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl; or

- (v) R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, and R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl; or

- (vi) R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰;

where X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or

- (vii) R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, and R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl; or

- (viii) R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen; or

- (ix) R² is hydrogen or alkyl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, halo, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸;

where X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

each R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclyl and substituted heterocyclyl provided that when X¹ is -SO- or -SO₂-, then R⁸ is not hydrogen; and

R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl;

or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, substituted heterocyclyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl; and R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl and -X²R¹⁰; w
here X² is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR¹³-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R¹³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and aryl; or

(x) R² is hydrogen or alkyl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, and -X¹R⁸; where

X¹ is oxygen, -S(O)_n-, or -NR⁹-;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl; and

R⁹ is hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

or R³ and R⁴ together with the carbon atoms pendent thereto, form a cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl; and

R⁵ and R⁶ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X²R¹⁰; where X² is oxygen, and R¹⁰ is aryl or substituted aryl; or

(xi) R² is hydrogen or alkyl;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -X¹R⁸; where X¹ is oxygen, and R⁸ is aryl or substituted aryl; and

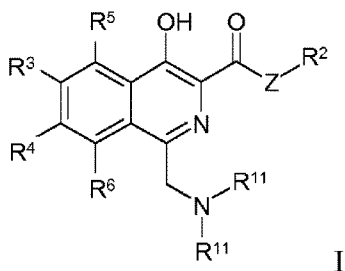
R⁵ and R⁶ are hydrogen; or

(xii) R¹² is C₁ to C₄ alkyl; or

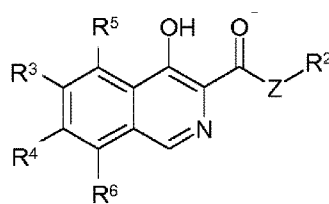
(xiii) R¹² is methyl.

Patentansprüche

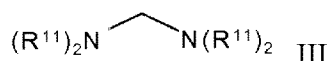
1. Verfahren zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel I oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



bei dem man eine Verbindung der Formel II:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel I ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel III:



umsetzt; wobei

Z für O, NR¹ oder S steht;

R¹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl ausgewählt ist;

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹-steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

R⁹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰ ausgewählt sind; wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³-steht;

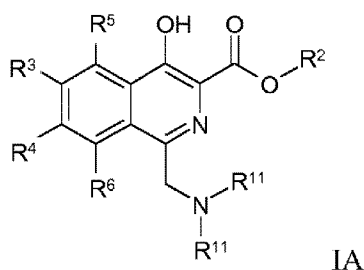
n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist und

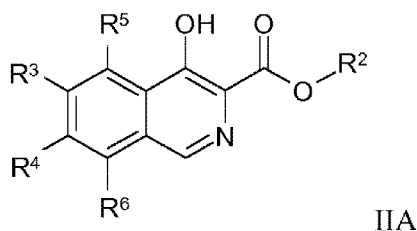
R¹³ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist; oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹⁰ und R¹³ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können; und

R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden.

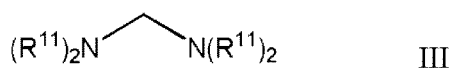
2. Verfahren nach Anspruch 1 zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel IA oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



bei dem man eine Verbindung der Formel IIA:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IA ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel III:



umsetzt; wobei

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind;

R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist und

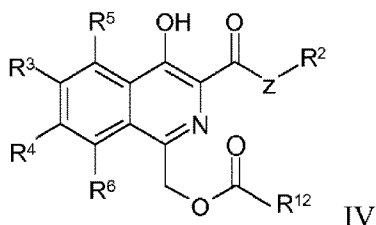
R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden.

3. Verfahren nach Anspruch 1 oder Anspruch 2, bei dem

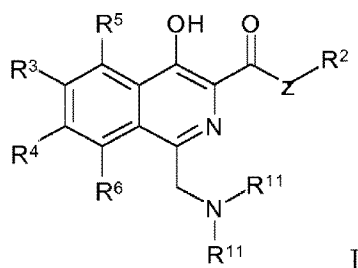
(i) die Reaktionsbedingungen eine Säure, wie Eisessig, umfassen oder

- (ii) die Umsetzung bei einer Temperatur von mehr als etwa 30°C, wie etwa 50°C bis etwa 60°C, durchgeführt wird oder
 (iii) R¹¹ für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl steht.

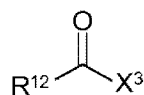
4. Verfahren zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel IV oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerenmischs davon:



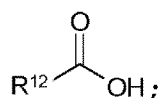
bei dem man eine Verbindung der Formel I:



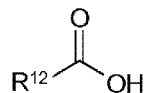
unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IV ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel



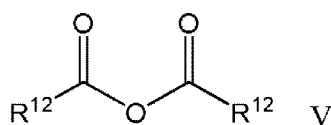
gefolgt von einer Verbindung der Formel



einer Verbindung der Formel R¹²-X³ gefolgt von einer Verbindung der Formel



oder einer Verbindung der Formel V: umgesetzt; wobei



Z für O, NR¹ oder S steht;

R¹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl ausgewählt ist;

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind;

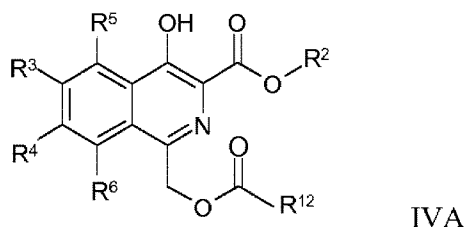
R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden;

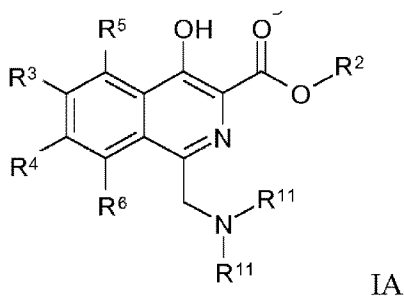
R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist oder dann, wenn zwei R¹² vorliegen, zwei R¹² zusammen mit dem Kohlenstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl bilden und

X³ für Halogen steht.

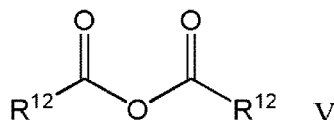
5. Verfahren nach Anspruch 4 zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel IVA oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



bei dem man eine Verbindung der Formel IA:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVA ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel V:



umsetzt; wobei

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹⁰ und R¹³ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind;

R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden und

R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹² zusammen mit dem Kohlenstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl bilden.

6. Verfahren nach Anspruch 4 oder Anspruch 5, bei dem

(i) die Reaktionsbedingungen eine Verbindung der Formel V umfassen oder

(ii) die Umsetzung unter einer Inertatmosphäre, beispielsweise unter einer Stickstoffatmosphäre, durchgeführt wird oder

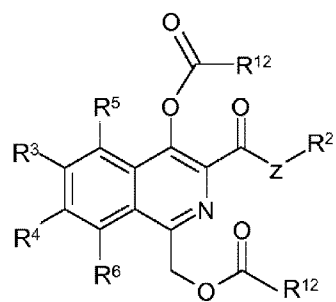
(iii) es sich bei den Reaktionsbedingungen um wasserfreie Reaktionsbedingungen handelt oder

(iv) die Umsetzung bei einer Temperatur von mehr als etwa 30°C, wie bei einer Temperatur von etwa 100°C, durchgeführt wird oder

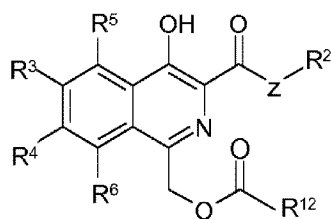
(v) R¹¹ und R₁₂ für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl, wie Methyl, stehen oder

(vi) die Reaktionsbedingungen eine Verbindung der Formel V, wobei R¹¹ für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl steht, umfassen und wobei die Umsetzung bei einer Temperatur von etwa 100°C, gegebenenfalls unter einer Stickstoffatmosphäre, durchgeführt wird.

7. Verfahren nach Anspruch 4 oder Anspruch 5, bei dem die Reaktionsbedingungen ferner die Umwandlung einer Verbindung der Formel VII in eine Verbindung der Formel IV

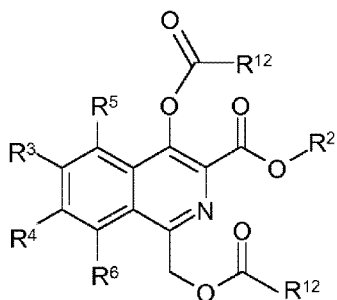


VII

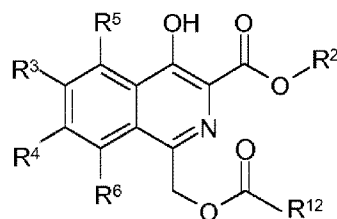


IV

bzw. die Umwandlung einer Verbindung der Formel VIIA in eine Verbindung der Formel IVA



VIIA

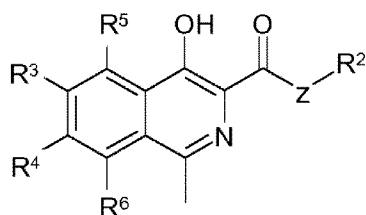


IVA

umfassen und gegebenenfalls

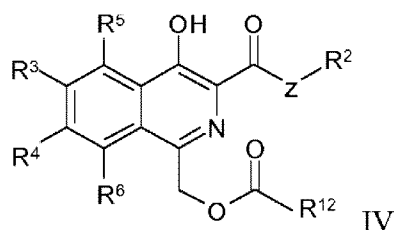
- (i) die Reaktionsbedingungen ein Amin, wie Morpholin, umfassen oder
- (ii) die Umsetzung in Dichlormethan durchgeführt wird oder
- (iii) die Umsetzung bei einer Temperatur unter 25°C, wie etwa 0°C bis etwa 10°C, durchgeführt wird oder
- (iv) die Reaktionsbedingungen Morpholin umfassen und die Umsetzung in Dichlormethan und bei einer Temperatur von etwa 0°C bis etwa 10°C durchgeführt wird.

8. Verfahren zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel VI oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



VI

bei dem man eine Verbindung der Formel IV:



IV

unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel VI ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt; wobei

Z für O, NR¹ oder S steht;

R¹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl ausgewählt ist;

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

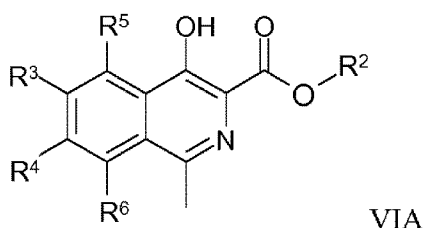
R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind;

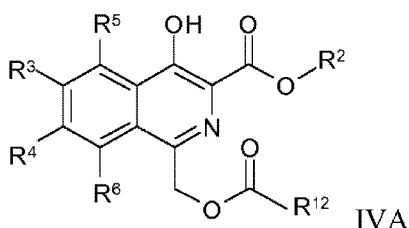
R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist und

R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist.

9. Verfahren nach Anspruch 8 zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel VIA oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



bei dem man eine Verbindung der Formel IVA:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel VIA ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt; wobei

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl,

Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind und R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist und

R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist.

10. Verfahren nach Anspruch 8 oder Anspruch 9, bei dem

(i) die Reaktionsbedingungen Wasserstoff umfassen oder

(ii) die Reaktionsbedingungen eine Base, beispielsweise Natriumcarbonat, umfassen;

(iii) die Reaktionsbedingungen Essigsäureethylester umfassen;

(iv) die Reaktionsbedingungen einen Katalysator, beispielsweise Pd/C, umfassen oder

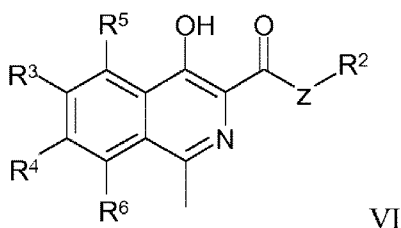
(v) die Reaktionsbedingungen eine Bedingung unter Druck, beispielsweise eine Bedingung unter Druck bei etwa 60 psi, umfassen oder

(vi) die Reaktionsbedingungen Wasserstoff, Natriumcarbonat, Essigsäureethylester, Pd/C und eine Bedingung unter Druck umfassen oder

(vii) die Reaktionsbedingungen Wasserstoff, Natriumcarbonat, Essigsäureethylester, Pd/C und eine Bedingung unter Druck bei etwa 60 psi umfassen;

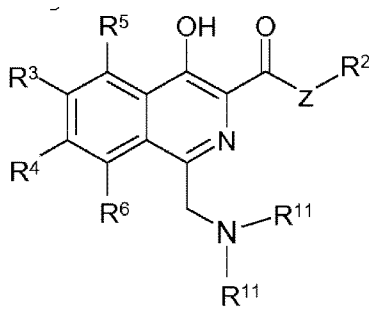
(viii) R¹² für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl, wie Methyl, steht.

11. Verfahren zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel VI oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:

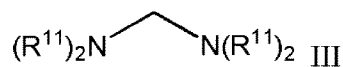
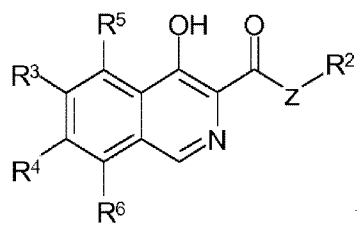


bei dem man:

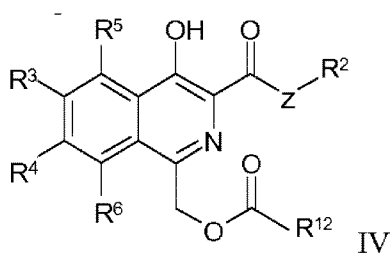
a) eine Verbindung der Formel II unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel I:



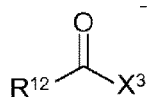
ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel III in Berührung bringt



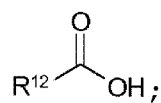
b) eine Verbindung der Formel I unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IV:



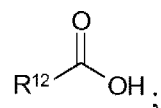
ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel



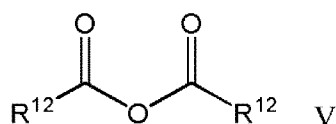
gefolgt von einer Verbindung der Formel



einer Verbindung der Formel $R^{12}-X^3$ gefolgt von einer Verbindung der Formel

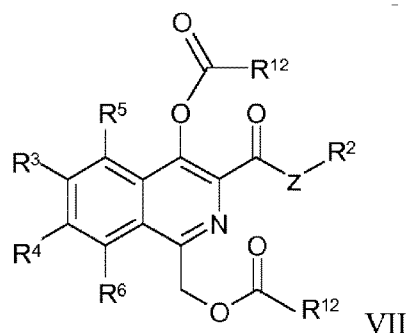


oder einer Verbindung der Formel V:



in Berührung bringt;

c) gegebenenfalls eine Verbindung der Formel VII:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IV ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt und
 d) eine Verbindung der Formel IV unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel VI ausreichenden Reaktions-
 bedingungen umwandelt;
 wobei

Z für 0, NR¹ oder S steht;

R¹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl ausgewählt ist;

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere
 Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl
 ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl,
 substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl,
 substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht,
 -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht,
 ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl,
 substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder
 substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl,
 Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰,
 wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann,
 wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter
 Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, sub-
 stituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl
 und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂-
 steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

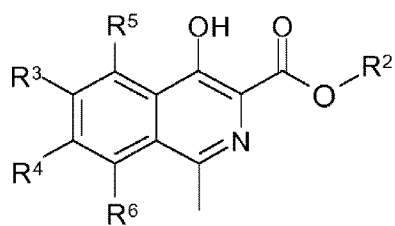
R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind und
 R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, sub-
 stituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stick-
 stoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden;

R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt
 ist oder dann, wenn zwei R¹² vorliegen, zwei R¹² zusammen mit dem Kohlenstoffatom, an das sie gebunden
 sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl bilden und

X³ für Halogen steht.

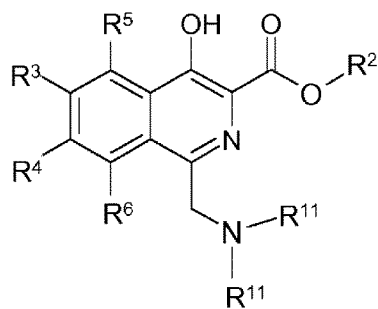
12. Verfahren nach Anspruch 11 zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel VIA oder eines Stereoisomers oder
 Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



VIA

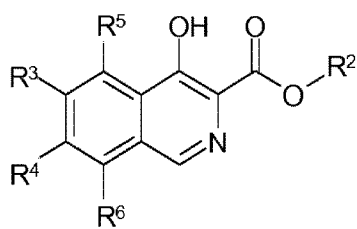
bei dem man:

a) eine Verbindung der Formel IIA unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IA:

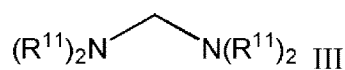


IA

ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel III



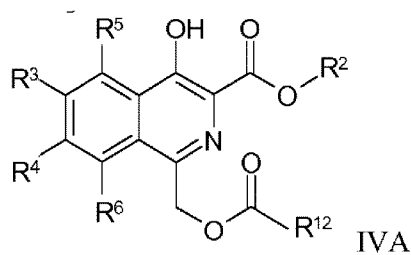
IIA



III

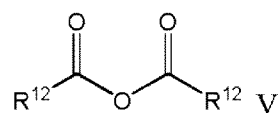
in Berührung bringt

b) eine Verbindung der Formel IA unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVA:



IVA

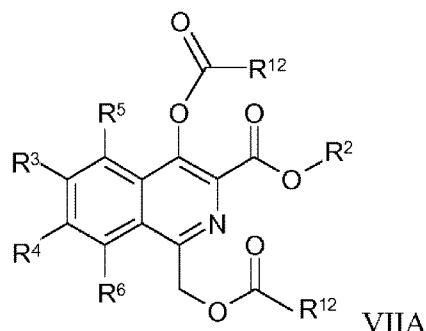
ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel V



V

in Berührung bringt;

c) gegebenenfalls eine Verbindung der Formel VIIA:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVA ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt und
 d) eine Verbindung der Formel IVA unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel VIA ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt;
 wobei

R^2 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R^3 und R^4 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und $-X^1R^8$, wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R^3 und R^4 zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R^5 und R^6 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und $-X^2R^{10}$, wobei X^2 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X^2 für $-NR^{13}-$ steht, R^{13} und R^{10} zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R^8 jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X^1 für $-SO-$ oder $-SO_2-$ steht, R^8 nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R^9 und R^{13} unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind und R^{10} aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

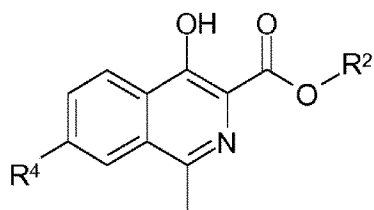
R^{11} jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R^{11} zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden; und

R^{12} jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R^{12} zusammen mit dem Kohlenstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl bilden.

13. Verfahren nach Anspruch 11 oder Anspruch 12, bei dem

- (i) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt a) und Schritt b) eine Säure umfassen oder
- (ii) R^{11} und R^{12} für C_1 - bis C_4 -Alkyl stehen oder
- (iii) R^{11} und R^{12} für C_1 - bis C_4 -Alkyl stehen und R^3 , R^5 und R^6 für Wasserstoff stehen oder
- (iv) R^{11} und R^{12} für C_1 - bis C_4 -Alkyl stehen und R^4 , R^5 und R^6 für Wasserstoff stehen oder
- (v) R^{11} und R^{12} für Methyl stehen.

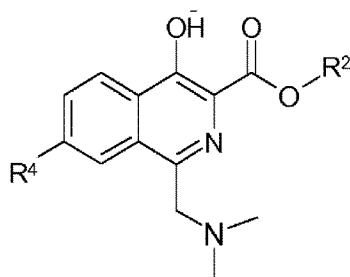
14. Verfahren nach Anspruch 11 zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel VIC oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



VIC

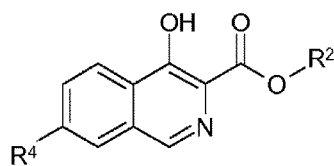
bei dem man:

a) eine Verbindung der Formel IIC unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IC:

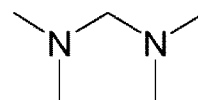


IC

ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel IIIA in Berührung bringt

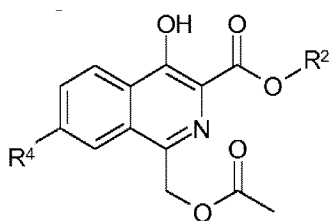


IIC



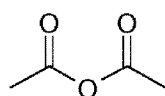
IIIA

b) eine Verbindung der Formel IC unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVC:



IVC

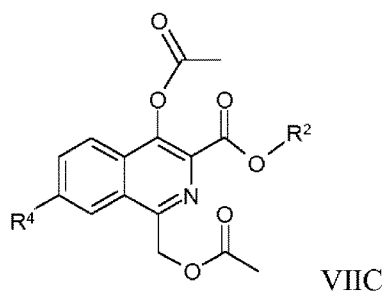
ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel VA



VA

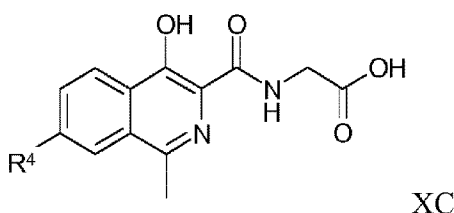
in Berührung bringt,

c) gegebenenfalls eine Verbindung der Formel VIIC:



unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVC ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt und
 d) eine Verbindung der Formel IVC unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel VIC ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt und gegebenenfalls

e) eine Verbindung der Formel VIC unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel XC:



oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit
 Glycin in Berührung bringt;
 wobei

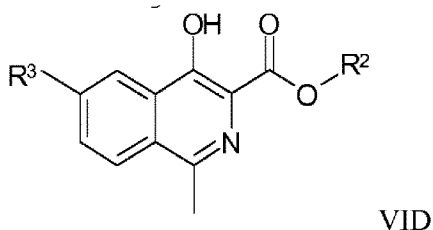
R^2 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere
 Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl
 ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R^4 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cy-
 cloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem He-
 teroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und
 $-X^1R^8$, wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt ist;

R^8 jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, sub-
 stituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl
 und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X^1 für $-SO-$ oder $-SO_2-$
 steht, R^8 nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

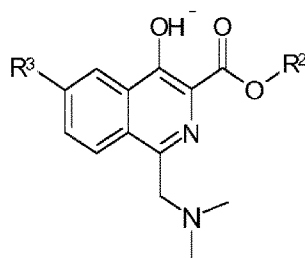
R^9 jeweils aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist.

15. Verfahren nach Anspruch 11 zur Herstellung einer Verbindung der Formel VID oder eines Stereoisomers oder
 Stereoisomerengemischs davon:



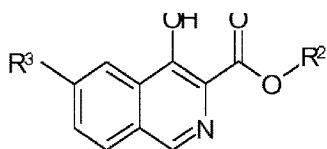
bei dem man:

a) eine Verbindung der Formel IID unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel ID:

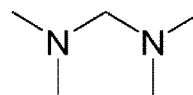


ID

ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel IIIA in Berührung bringt

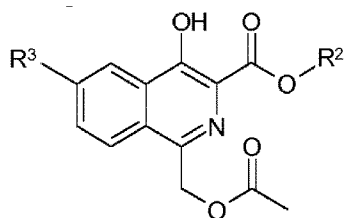


IID



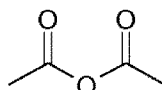
IIIA

b) eine Verbindung der Formel ID unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVD:



IVD

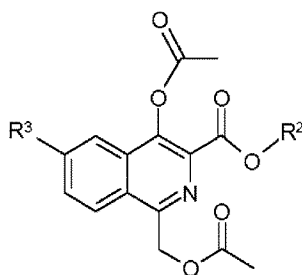
ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit einer Verbindung der Formel VA



VA

in Berührung bringt,

c) gegebenenfalls eine Verbindung der Formel VIID:

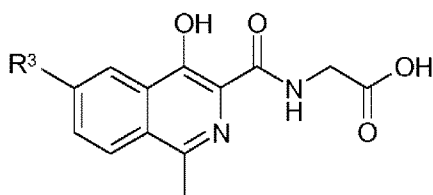


VIID

unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel IVD ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt und

d) eine Verbindung der Formel IVD unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel VID ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen umwandelt und gegebenenfalls

e) eine Verbindung der Formel VID unter zur Bildung einer Verbindung der Formel XD:



XD

oder eines Stereoisomers oder Stereoisomerengemischs davon ausreichenden Reaktionsbedingungen mit Glycin in Berührung bringt;
wobei

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt ist oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

R⁹ jeweils aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist.

16. Verfahren nach Anspruch 14 oder 15, bei dem

- (i) R² für Wasserstoff steht und R⁴ für Phenoxy steht oder
- (ii) R² für Wasserstoff steht und R⁴ für 4-Methoxyphenoxy steht oder
- (iii) R² für Wasserstoff steht und R⁴ für 3,5-Difluorphenoxy steht.

17. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 11, 12, 14 oder 15, bei dem

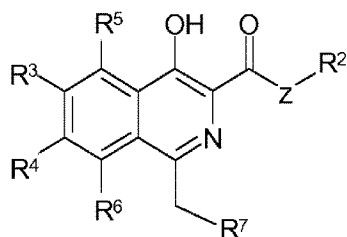
- (i) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt a) eine Säure, wie Eisessig, umfassen oder
- (ii) Schritt a) bei einer Temperatur von mehr als etwa 30°C, wie etwa 50°C bis etwa 60°C, durchgeführt wird oder
- (iii) Schritt b) bei einer Temperatur von mehr als etwa 30°C, wie bei einer Temperatur von etwa 100°C, durchgeführt wird oder
- (iv) das Verfahren Schritt c) umfasst oder
- (v) das Verfahren Schritt c) umfasst und die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt c) ein Amin, beispielsweise Morpholin, umfassen oder
- (vi) das Verfahren Schritt c) umfasst und Schritt c) in Dichlormethan durchgeführt wird oder
- (vii) das Verfahren Schritt c) umfasst und Schritt c) bei einer Temperatur unter etwa 25°C, wie etwa 0°C bis etwa 10°C, durchgeführt wird oder
- (viii) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt d) Wasserstoff umfassen oder
- (ix) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt d) eine Base, beispielsweise Natriumcarbonat, umfassen oder
- (x) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt d) etwa 0,5 bis etwa 1 Moläquivalente Natriumcarbonat umfassen oder
- (xi) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt d) Essigsäureethylester umfassen oder
- (xii) die Reaktionsbedingungen von Schritt d) einen Katalysator, beispielsweise Pd/C umfassen.

18. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1, 2, 11 oder 12, bei dem etwa 1,1 bis etwa 1,5 Moläquivalente der Verbindung der Formel III verwendet werden, oder Verfahren nach Anspruch 14 oder 15, bei dem etwa 1,1 bis etwa 1,5 Moläquivalente der Verbindung der Formel IIIA verwendet werden.

19. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 4, 5, 11 oder 12, bei dem etwa 2 bis etwa 3 Moläquivalente der Verbindung der Formel V verwendet werden, oder Verfahren nach Anspruch 14 oder 15, bei dem etwa 2 bis etwa 3 Moläquivalente

der Verbindung der Formel VA verwendet werden.

20. Verbindung der Formel VIII:



VIII

wobei:

Z für 0, NR¹ oder S steht;

R¹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl ausgewählt ist;

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁷ entweder für -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) oder -OC(O)R¹² steht;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind;

R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

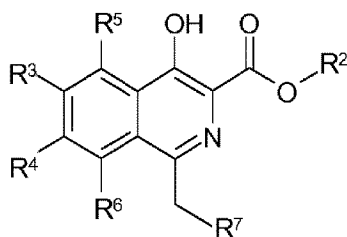
R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden und

R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

oder ein Salz, Ester, Stereoisomer oder Stereoisomerengemisch davon;

mit der Maßgabe, dass es sich bei der Verbindung nicht um 1-Dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenyl-sulfanyli-sochinolin-3-carbonsäurebutylester handelt.

21. Verbindung nach Anspruch 20 der Formel VIIIA:



VIII A

wobei:

R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸, wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Alkoxy, substituiertem Alkoxy, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰, wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder dann, wenn X² für -NR¹³- steht, R¹³ und R¹⁰ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, unter Bildung einer Heterocyclyl- oder substituierten Heterocyclylgruppe miteinander verknüpft sein können;

R⁷ entweder für -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) oder -OC(O)R¹² steht;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R⁹ und R¹³ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt sind;

R¹⁰ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

R¹¹ jeweils unabhängig aus Alkyl, Benzyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder zwei R¹¹ zusammen mit dem Stickstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, ein 4-8-gliedriges Heterocyclyl oder ein Heteroaryl bilden und

R¹² jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist;

oder ein Salz, Ester, Stereoisomer oder Stereoisomerengemisch davon;

mit der Maßgabe, dass es sich bei der Verbindung nicht um 1-Dimethylaminomethyl-4-hydroxy-7-phenyl-sulfanyli-sochinolin-3-carbonsäurebutylester handelt.

22. Verbindung nach Anspruch 20 oder Anspruch 21, wobei

(i) R² für unsubstituiertes Alkyl steht oder

(ii) R⁵ und R⁶ für Wasserstoff stehen oder

(iii) R² aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, ausgewählt ist und

R⁵ und R⁶ für Wasserstoff stehen;

(iv) R⁷ für -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) steht und R¹¹ für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl steht oder

(v) R⁷ für -OC(O)R¹² steht und R¹² für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl steht;

(vi) R² für Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, steht;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, sub-

stituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und $-X^1R^8$, wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R^3 und R^4 zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R^5 und R^6 für Wasserstoff stehen;

R^7 für $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$ steht;

R^8 jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X^1 für $-SO-$ oder $-SO_2-$ steht, R^8 nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R^9 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist und

R^{11} jeweils unabhängig aus C_1- bis C_4 -Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist oder

(vii) R^2 für Alkyl, das unsubstituiert oder durch einen oder mehrere Substituenten, die unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl und Heteroaryl ausgewählt sind, substituiert ist, steht;

R^3 und R^4 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertem Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und $-X^1R^8$, wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht, wobei n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht, ausgewählt sind oder R^3 und R^4 zusammen mit dem daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatom ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden;

R^5 und R^6 für Wasserstoff stehen;

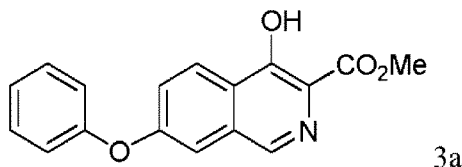
R^7 für $-OC(O)R^{12}$ steht;

R^8 jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X^1 für $-SO-$ oder $-SO_2-$ steht, R^8 nicht für Wasserstoff steht;

R^9 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist und

R^{12} jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl und Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist.

23. Verbindung, bei der es sich um 4-Hydroxy-7-phenoxyisochinolin-3-carbonsäuremethylester (3a) handelt:



24. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1, 4 oder 11, bei dem R^1 für Wasserstoff steht.

25. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11, 12, 14 oder 15, bei dem R^2 für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht.

26. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11 oder 12, bei dem

(i) R^3 und R^4 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und $-X^1R^8$ ausgewählt sind;

wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R^8 jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X^1 für $-SO-$ oder $-SO_2-$ steht, R^8 nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

R^9 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden oder

(ii) R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl, Hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei

X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R⁸ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R⁹ für Wasserstoff, Alkyl oder Aryl steht;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl oder Heteroaryl bilden oder

(iii) R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff steht und R⁸ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; oder

(iv) R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰ ausgewählt sind; wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R¹⁰ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R¹³ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist; oder

(v) R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und -X²R¹⁰ ausgewählt sind; wobei X² für Sauerstoff steht und R¹⁰ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; oder

(vi) R⁵ und R⁶ für Wasserstoff stehen oder

(vii) R² für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind;

wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹-steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

R⁹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden und

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰ ausgewählt sind; wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R¹⁰ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R¹³ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist; oder

(viii) R² für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl, Hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei

X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R⁸ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R⁹ für Wasserstoff, Alkyl oder Aryl steht;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl oder Heteroaryl bilden und

R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und -X²R¹⁰ ausgewählt sind; wobei X² für Sauerstoff steht und R¹⁰ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; oder

(ix) R² für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht;

R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff steht und R⁸ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; und

R⁵ und R⁶ für Wasserstoff stehen.

27. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1, 2, 4, 5, 11 oder 12, bei dem

(i) R¹¹ für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl steht oder

(ii) R¹¹ für Methyl steht.

28. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 4, 5, 8, 9, 11 oder 12, bei dem

(i) R¹² für C₁- bis C₄-Alkyl steht oder

(ii) R¹² für Methyl steht.

29. Verfahren nach Anspruch 7, bei dem

(i) R¹ für Wasserstoff steht oder

(ii) R² für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht oder

(iii) R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind;

wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹-steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R⁸ jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X¹ für -SO- oder -SO₂- steht, R⁸ nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

R⁹ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden oder

(iv) R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl, Hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei

X¹ für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR⁹- steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R⁸ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R⁹ für Wasserstoff, Alkyl oder Aryl steht;

oder R³ und R⁴ zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl oder Heteroaryl bilden oder

(v) R³ und R⁴ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und -X¹R⁸ ausgewählt sind; wobei X¹ für Sauerstoff steht und R⁸ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; oder

(vi) R⁵ und R⁶ unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und -X²R¹⁰ ausgewählt sind;

wobei X² für Sauerstoff, -S(O)_n- oder -NR¹³- steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R¹⁰ für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R¹³ aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist; oder

(vii) R^5 und R^6 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und $-X^2R^{10}$ ausgewählt sind; wobei X^2 für Sauerstoff steht und R^{10} für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; oder

(viii) R^5 und R^6 für Wasserstoff stehen oder

(ix) R^2 für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht;

R^3 und R^4 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Halogen, Hydroxy, Cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und $-X^1R^8$ ausgewählt sind;

wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R^8 jeweils unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Cycloalkyl, substituiertem Cycloalkyl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl, Heterocyclyl und substituiertem Heterocyclyl ausgewählt ist, mit der Maßgabe, dass dann, wenn X^1 für $-SO-$ oder $-SO_2-$ steht, R^8 nicht für Wasserstoff steht; und

R^9 aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist;

oder R^3 und R^4 zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, substituiertes Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, substituiertes Heterocyclyl, Aryl, substituiertes Aryl, Heteroaryl oder substituiertes Heteroaryl bilden und

R^5 und R^6 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Halogen, Alkyl, substituiertem Alkyl, Aryl, substituiertem Aryl, Heteroaryl, substituiertem Heteroaryl und $-X^2R^{10}$ ausgewählt sind; wobei X^2 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^{13}-$ steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R^{10} für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R^{13} aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl und Aryl ausgewählt ist; oder

(x) R^2 für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht;

R^3 und R^4 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff, Alkyl, Aryl, Heteroaryl, Hydroxy, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ und $-X^1R^8$ ausgewählt sind; wobei

X^1 für Sauerstoff, $-S(O)_n-$ oder $-NR^9-$ steht;

n für 0, 1 oder 2 steht;

R^8 für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht und

R^9 für Wasserstoff, Alkyl oder Aryl steht;

oder R^3 und R^4 zusammen mit den daran gebundenen Kohlenstoffatomen ein Cycloalkyl, Heterocyclyl, Aryl oder Heteroaryl bilden und

R^5 und R^6 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und $-X^2R^{10}$ ausgewählt sind; wobei X^2 für Sauerstoff steht und R^{10} für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; oder

(xi) R^2 für Wasserstoff oder Alkyl steht;

R^3 und R^4 unabhängig aus der Gruppe bestehend aus Wasserstoff und $-X^1R^8$ ausgewählt sind; wobei X^1 für Sauerstoff steht und R^8 für Aryl oder substituiertes Aryl steht; und

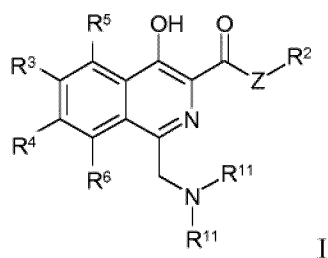
R^5 und R^6 für Wasserstoff stehen oder

(xii) R^{12} für C_1- bis C_4 -Alkyl steht oder

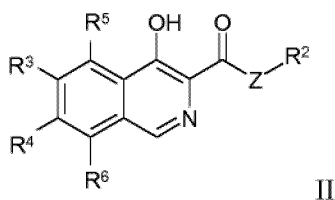
(xiii) R^{12} für Methyl steht.

Revendications

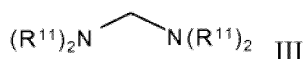
1. Procédé de préparation d'un composé de formule I ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



le procédé comprenant la mise en contact d'un composé de formule II :



avec un composé de formule III :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule I ; dans lequel

Z est O, NR¹, ou S ;

R¹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle ;

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle ;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸ ; où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;
n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène ; et
R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué ;
R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ ;
où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;

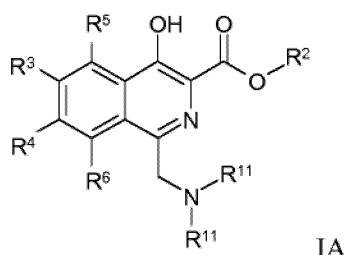
R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué ; et

R¹³ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ; ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹⁰ et R¹³, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué ; et

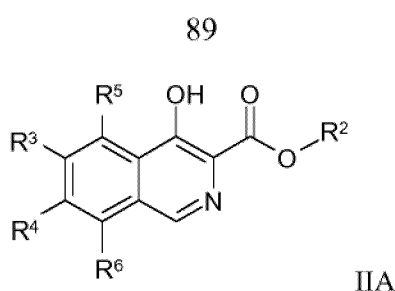
chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome

d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle.

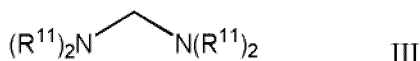
2. Procédé selon la revendication 1 de préparation d'un composé de formule IA ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



comprenant la mise en contact d'un composé de formule IIA :



avec un composé de formule III :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IA ; dans lequel

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle ;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué ;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹³ et R¹⁰, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué ;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène ;

R⁹ et R¹³ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ;

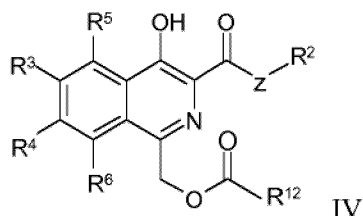
R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué ; et

chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle.

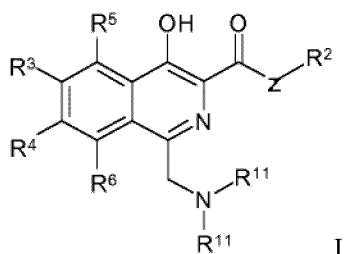
3. Procédé selon la revendication 1 ou la revendication 2, dans lequel

- (i) les conditions de réaction comprennent un acide, tel que l'acide acétique glacial; ou
- (ii) la réaction est conduite à une température supérieure à environ 30 °C, telle que d'environ 50 °C à environ 60 °C; ou
- (iii) R¹¹ est alkyle en C₁ à C₄.

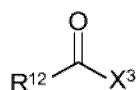
4. Procédé de préparation d'un composé de formule IV ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



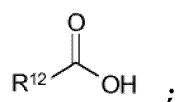
comprenant la mise en contact d'un composé de formule I :



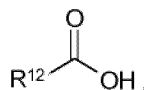
avec un composé de formule



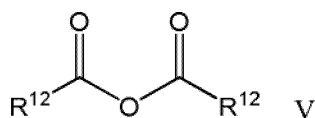
suivi par un composé de formule



un composé de formule R¹²-X³ suivi par un composé de formule



ou un composé de formule V :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IV ; dans lequel

Z est O, NR¹ ou S ;

R¹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle ;

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹³ et R¹⁰, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène ;

R⁹ et R¹³ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle;

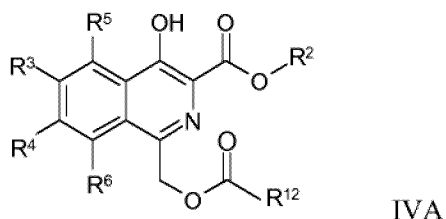
R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle;

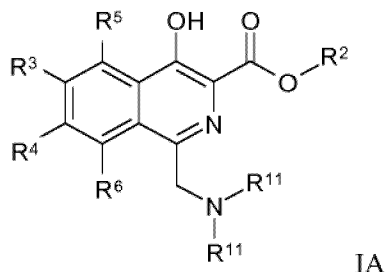
chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle, ou lorsque deux R¹² sont présents, deux R¹² conjointement avec l'atome de carbone auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons; et

X³ est halogéno.

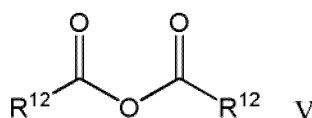
5. Procédé selon la revendication 4 de préparation d'un composé de formule IVA ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



comprenant la mise en contact d'un composé de formule IA :



avec un composé de formule V :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVA; dans lequel

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹³ et R¹⁰, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène;

R⁹ et R¹³ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle;

R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué;

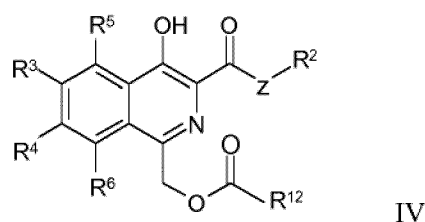
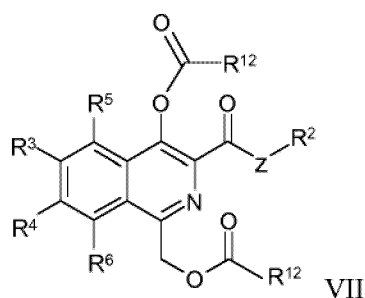
chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle; et

chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle, ou deux R¹² conjointement avec l'atome de carbone auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons.

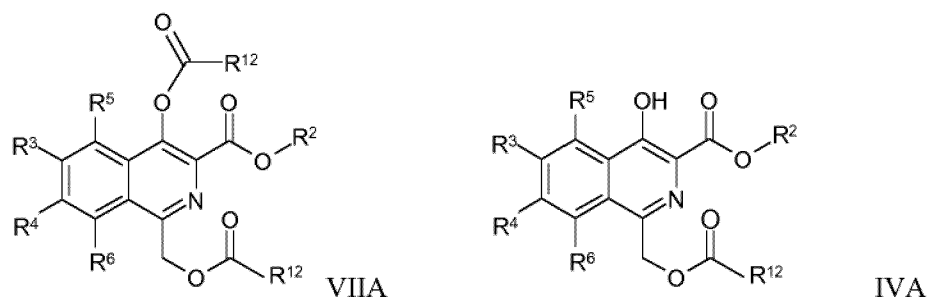
6. Procédé selon la revendication 4 ou la revendication 5, dans lequel

- (i) les conditions de réaction comprennent un composé de formule V; ou
- (ii) la réaction est conduite sous une atmosphère inerte, par exemple sous une atmosphère d'azote; ou
- (iii) les conditions de réaction sont des conditions de réaction anhydres; ou
- (iv) la réaction est conduite à une température supérieure à environ 30 °C, telle qu'à une température d'environ 100 °C; ou
- (v) R¹¹ et R¹² sont alkyle en C₁ à C₄, tel que méthyle; ou
- (vi) les conditions de réaction comprennent un composé de formule V où R¹² est alkyle en C₁ à C₄; et dans lequel la réaction est conduite à une température d'environ 100 °C, facultativement sous une atmosphère d'azote.

7. Procédé selon la revendication 4 ou la revendication 5, dans lequel les conditions de réaction comprennent en outre la conversion d'un composé de formule VII en un composé de formule IV;



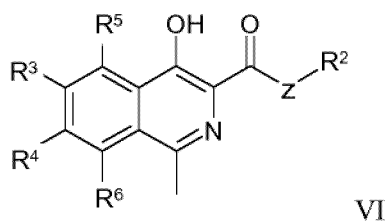
ou la conversion d'un composé de formule VIIA en un composé de formule IVA,



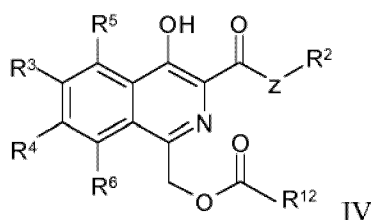
et facultativement dans lequel

- (i) les conditions de réaction comprennent une amine, telle que la morpholine; ou
- (ii) la réaction est conduite dans du dichlorométhane ; ou
- (iii) la réaction est conduite à une température en dessous de 25 °C, telle que d'environ 0 °C à environ 10 °C ; ou
- (iv) les conditions de réaction comprennent de la morpholine; et la réaction est conduite dans du dichlorométhane et à une température d'environ 0 °C à environ 10 °C.

8. Procédé de préparation d'un composé de formule VI ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



comprenant la conversion d'un composé de formule IV :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule VI; dans lequel

Z est O, NR¹ ou S;

R¹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle;

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est

oxygène, $-S(O)_n-$ ou $-NR^{13}-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X^2 est $-NR^{13}-$, alors R^{13} et R^{10} , conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

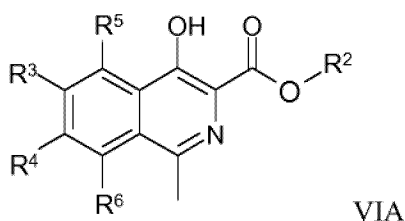
chaque R^8 est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X^1 est $-SO-$ ou $-SO_2-$, alors R^8 ne soit pas hydrogène;

R^9 et R^{13} sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; et

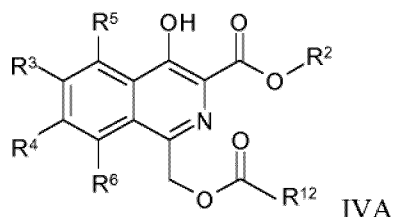
R^{10} est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué; et

chaque R^{12} est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle.

9. Procédé selon la revendication 8 de préparation d'un composé de formule VIA ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



comprenant la conversion d'un composé de formule IVA :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule VIA; dans lequel

R^2 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R^3 et R^4 sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, et $-X^1R^8$ où X^1 est oxygène, $-S(O)_n-$ ou $-NR^9-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R^3 , R^4 conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R^5 et R^6 sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et $-X^2R^{10}$ où X^2 est oxygène, $-S(O)_n-$ ou $-NR^{13}-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X^2 est $-NR^{13}-$, alors R^{13} et R^{10} , conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R^8 est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X^1 est $-SO-$ ou $-SO_2-$, alors R^8 ne soit pas hydrogène;

R^9 et R^{13} sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; et

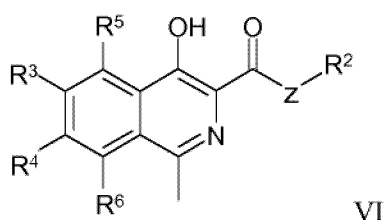
R^{10} est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué; et

chaque R^{12} est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle.

10. Procédé selon la revendication 8 ou la revendication 9, dans lequel

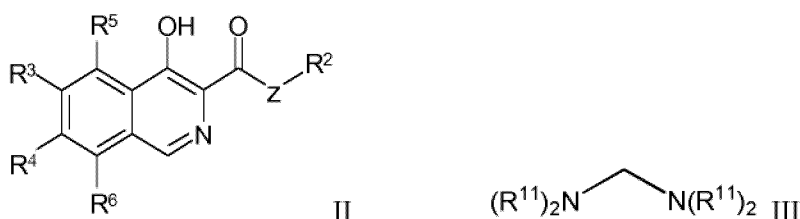
- (i) les conditions de réaction comprennent de l'hydrogène; ou
 (ii) les conditions de réaction comprennent une base, par exemple le carbonate de sodium;
 (iii) les conditions de réaction comprennent de l'acétate d'éthyle;
 (iv) les conditions de réaction comprennent un catalyseur, par exemple Pd/C; ou
 (v) les conditions de réaction comprennent une condition sous pression, par exemple une condition sous pression à environ 60 psi; ou
 (vi) les conditions de réaction comprennent de l'hydrogène, du carbonate de sodium, de l'acétate d'éthyle, du Pd/C et une condition sous pression; ou
 (vii) les conditions de réaction comprennent de l'hydrogène, du carbonate de sodium, de l'acétate d'éthyle, du Pd/C et une condition sous pression à environ 60 psi;
 (viii) R¹² est alkyle en C₁ à C₄, par exemple méthyle.

11. Procédé de préparation d'un composé de formule VI ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :

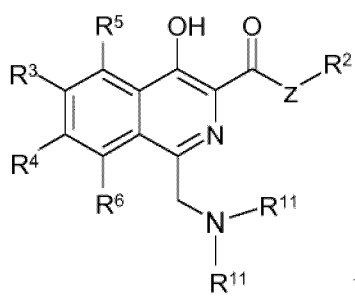


le procédé comprenant les étapes de :

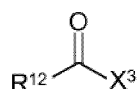
- a) mise en contact d'un composé de formule II avec un composé de formule III



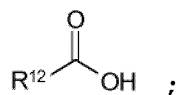
dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule I :



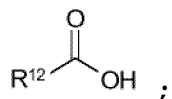
- b) mise en contact d'un composé de formule I avec un composé de formule



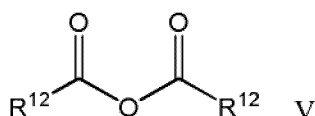
suivi par un composé de formule



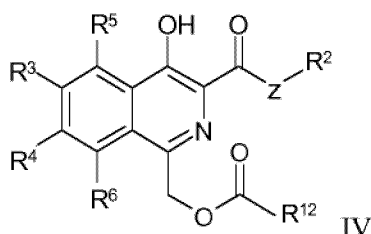
un composé de formule $R^{12}-X^3$ suivi par un composé de formule



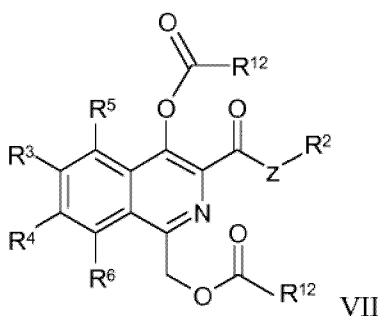
ou un composé de formule V :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IV :



c) facultativement, conversion d'un composé de formule VII :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IV; et

d) conversion d'un composé de formule IV dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule VI;

dans lequel

Z est O, NR^1 ou S ;

R^1 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle ;

R^2 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle ;

R^3 et R^4 sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, et $-X^1R^8$ où X^1 est oxygène, $-S(O)_n-$ ou $-NR^9-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R^3 , R^4 conjointement avec l'atome

de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué ;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹³ et R¹⁰, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène;

R⁹ et R¹³ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; et

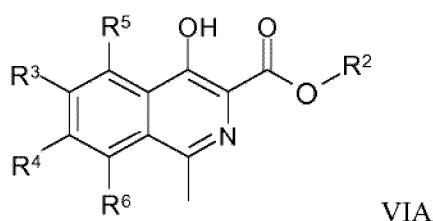
R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué ;

chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle;

chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle, ou lorsque deux R¹² sont présents, deux R¹² conjointement avec l'atome de carbone auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons; et

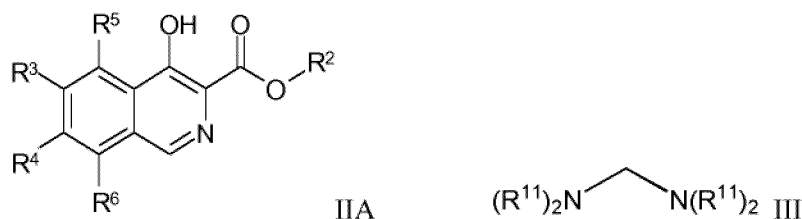
X³ est halogéno.

12. Procédé selon la revendication 11 de préparation d'un composé de formule VIA ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :

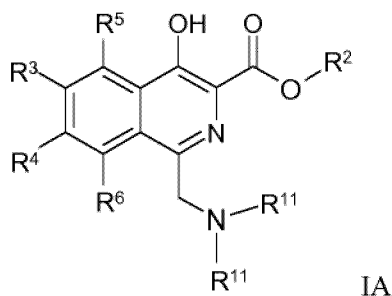


le procédé comprenant les étapes de :

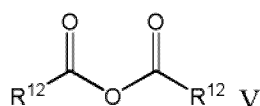
- a) mise en contact d'un composé de formule IIA avec un composé de formule III



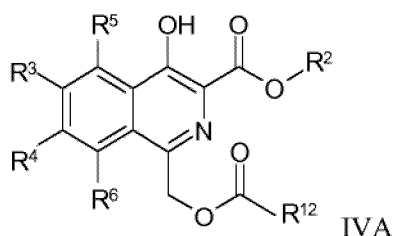
dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IA :



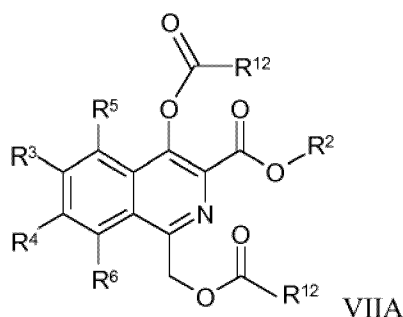
b) mise en contact d'un composé de formule IA avec un composé de formule V



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVA :



c) facultativement, conversion d'un composé de formule VIIA :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVA; et

d) conversion d'un composé de formule IVA dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule VIA;
dans lequel

R^2 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R^3 et R^4 sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-\text{N}(\text{R}^8)-\text{R}^8$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, $-\text{NR}^8\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^8\text{R}^8$, et $-\text{X}^1\text{R}^8$ où X^1 est oxygène, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-$ ou $-\text{NR}^9-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R^3 , R^4 conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R^5 et R^6 sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et $-\text{X}^2\text{R}^{10}$ où X^2 est oxygène, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-$ ou $-\text{NR}^9-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X^2 est $-\text{NR}^{13}-$, alors R^{13} et R^{10} , conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R^8 est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X^1 est $-\text{SO}-$ ou $-\text{SO}_2-$, alors R^8 ne soit pas hydrogène;

R^9 et R^{13} sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; et

R^{10} est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué;

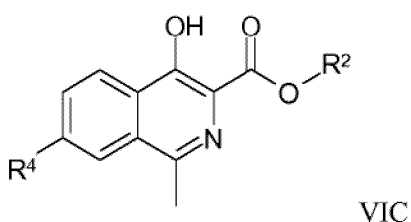
chaque R^{11} est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R^{11} conjointement avec

l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle; et chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle, ou deux R¹² conjointement avec l'atome de carbone auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons.

13. Procédé selon la revendication 11 ou la revendication 12, dans lequel

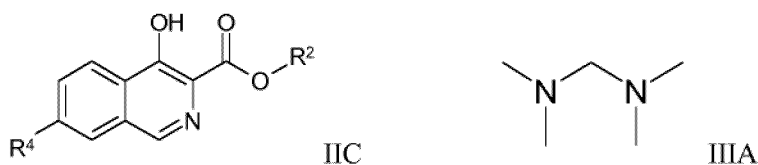
- (i) les conditions de réaction des étapes a) et b) comprennent un acide; ou
- (ii) R¹¹ et R¹² sont alkyle en C₁ à C₄; ou
- (iii) R¹¹ et R¹² sont alkyle en C₁ à C₄, et R³, R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène; ou
- (iv) R¹¹ et R¹² sont alkyle en C₁ à C₄, et R⁴, R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène; ou
- (v) R¹¹ et R¹² sont méthyle.

14. Procédé selon la revendication 11 de préparation d'un composé de formule VIC ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :

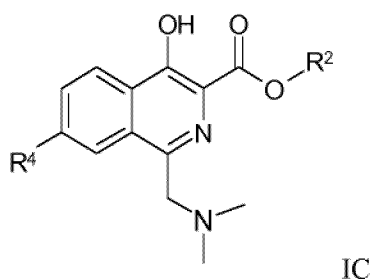


comprenant les étapes de :

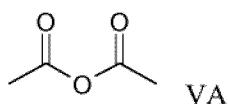
a) mise en contact d'un composé de formule IIC avec un composé de formule IIIA



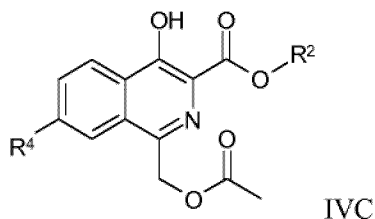
dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IC :



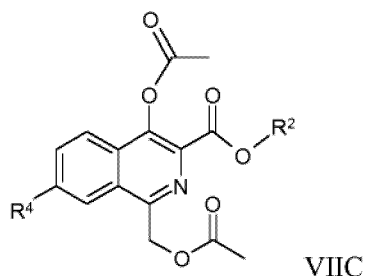
b) mise en contact d'un composé de formule IC avec un composé de formule VA



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVC :



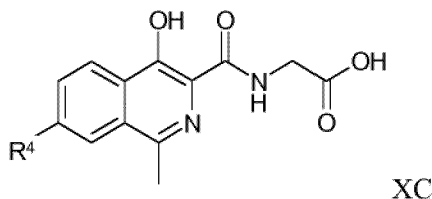
c) facultativement, conversion d'un composé de formule VIIC :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVC; et

d) conversion d'un composé de formule IVC dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule VIC; et facultativement

e) mise en contact d'un composé de formule VIC avec de la glycine dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule XC :



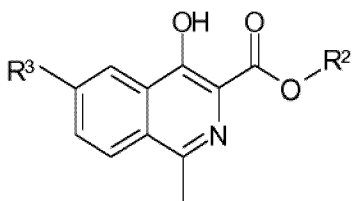
ou un stéréoisomère ou un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci; dans lequel

R^2 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle ;

R^4 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, et $-X^1R^8$ où X^1 est oxygène, $-S(O)_n-$ ou $-NR^9-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2;

chaque R^8 est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X^1 est $-SO-$ ou $-SO_2-$, alors R^8 ne soit pas hydrogène; et chaque R^9 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle.

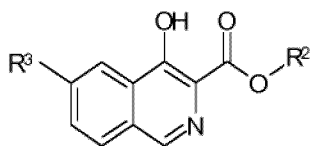
15. Procédé selon la revendication 11 de préparation d'un composé de formule VID ou d'un stéréoisomère ou d'un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci :



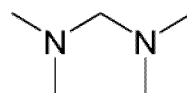
VID

comprenant les étapes de :

a) mise en contact d'un composé de formule IID avec un composé de formule IIIA

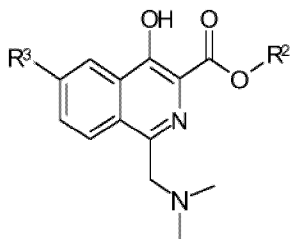


IID



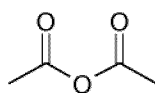
IIIA

dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule ID :



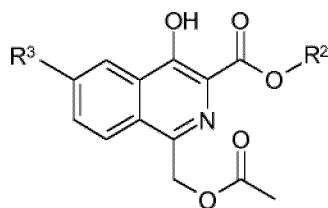
ID

b) mise en contact d'un composé de formule ID avec un composé de formule VA



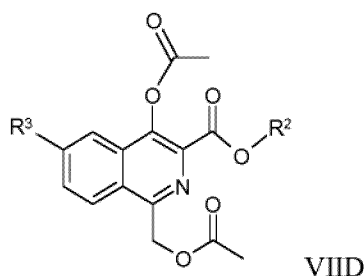
VA

dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVD :

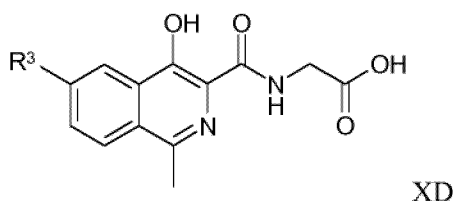


IVD

c) facultativement, conversion d'un composé de formule VIID :



dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule IVD ; et
 d) conversion d'un composé de formule IVD dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule VID; et facultativement
 e) mise en contact d'un composé de formule VID avec de la glycine dans des conditions de réaction suffisantes pour produire un composé de formule XD :



ou un stéréoisomère ou un mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci; dans lequel

R^2 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R^3 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$, et $-X^1R^8$ où X^1 est oxygène, $-S(O)_n-$ ou $-NR^9-$ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R^3 , R^4 conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

chaque R^8 est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X^1 est $-SO-$ ou $-SO_2-$, alors R^8 ne soit pas hydrogène; et chaque R^9 est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle.

16. Procédé selon la revendication 14 ou 15, dans lequel

- (i) R^2 est hydrogène et R^4 est phénoxy; ou
- (ii) R^2 est hydrogène et R^4 est 4-méthoxyphénoxy ; ou
- (iii) R^2 est hydrogène et R^4 est 3,5-difluorophénoxy.

17. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 11, 12, 14 et 15, dans lequel

- (i) les conditions de réaction de l'étape a) comprennent un acide, par exemple l'acide acétique glacial ; ou
- (ii) l'étape a) est conduite à une température supérieure à environ 30 °C, par exemple à une température d'environ 50 °C à environ 60 °C; ou
- (iii) l'étape b) est conduite à une température supérieure à environ 30 °C, par exemple à une température d'environ 100 °C; ou
- (iv) le procédé comprend l'étape c) ; ou
- (v) le procédé comprend l'étape c) et les conditions de réaction de l'étape c) comprennent une amine, par exemple la morpholine; ou
- (vi) le procédé comprend l'étape c) et l'étape c) est conduite dans du dichlorométhane; ou
- (vii) le procédé comprend l'étape c) et l'étape c) est conduite à une température en dessous d'environ 25 °C,

par exemple à une température d'environ 0 °C à environ 10 °C ; ou

(viii) les conditions de réaction de l'étape d) comprennent de l'hydrogène; ou

(ix) les conditions de réaction de l'étape d) comprennent une base, par exemple le carbonate de sodium; ou

(x) les conditions de réaction de l'étape d) comprennent d'environ 0,5 à environ 1 équivalent molaire de carbonate de sodium; ou

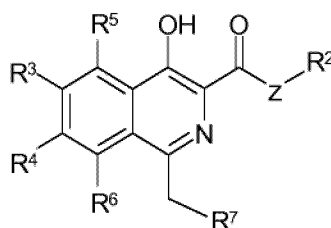
(xi) les conditions de réaction de l'étape d) comprennent de l'acétate d'éthyle; ou

(xii) les conditions de réaction de l'étape d) comprennent un catalyseur, par exemple Pd/C.

18. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1, 2, 11 et 12, dans lequel d'environ 1,1 à environ 1,5 équivalent molaire du composé de formule III est utilisé, ou procédé de la revendication 14 ou 15, dans lequel d'environ 1,1 à environ 1,5 équivalent molaire du composé de formule IIIA est utilisé.

19. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 4, 5, 11 et 12, dans lequel d'environ 2 à environ 3 équivalents molaires du composé de formule V sont utilisés, ou procédé de la revendication 14 ou 15, dans lequel d'environ 2 à environ 3 équivalents molaires du composé de formule VA sont utilisés.

20. Composé de formule VIII :



VIII

dans lequel :

Z est O, NR¹ ou S ;

R¹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle ;

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹³ et R¹⁰, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

R⁷ est soit -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) soit -OC(O)R¹² ;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène;

R⁹ et R¹³ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle;

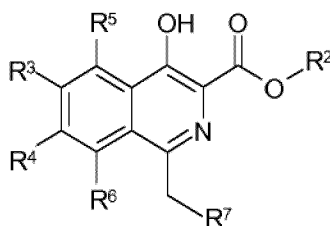
R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle ; et

chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle; ou sel, ester, stéréoisomère ou mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci;

à condition que le composé ne soit pas l'ester de butyle d'acide 1-diméthylaminométhyl-4-hydroxy-7-phényl-sulfanyl-isoquinoléine-3-carboxylique.

21. Composé selon la revendication 20 de formule VIIIA :



VIIIA

dans lequel :

R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, alcoxy, alcoxy substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou lorsque X² est -NR¹³-, alors R¹³ et R¹⁰, conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont liés, peuvent être joints pour former un groupe hétérocyclyle ou hétérocyclyle substitué;

R⁷ est soit -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) soit -OC(O)R¹² ;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène;

R⁹ et R¹³ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle;

R¹⁰ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué;

chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle, benzyle et aryle, ou deux R¹¹ conjointement avec l'atome d'azote auquel ils sont attachés forment un hétérocyclyle à 4 à 8 chaînons ou un hétéroaryle; et

chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle; ou sel, ester, stéréoisomère ou mélange de stéréoisomères de celui-ci;

à condition que le composé ne soit pas l'ester de butyle d'acide 1-diméthylaminométhyl-4-hydroxy-7-phényl-sulfanyl-isoquinoléine-3-carboxylique.

22. Composé selon la revendication 20 ou la revendication 21, dans lequel

(i) R² est alkyle non substitué; ou

(ii) R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène; ou

(iii) R² est choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle; et

R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène ;

(iv) R⁷ est -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) et R¹¹ est alkyle en C₁ à C₄ ; ou

(v) R⁷ est -OC(O)R¹² et R¹² est alkyle en C₁ à C₄ ;

(vi) R² est alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène ;

R⁷ est -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) ;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène;

R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; et

chaque R¹¹ est indépendamment choisi parmi alkyle en C₁ à C₄ et aryle; ou

(vii) R² est alkyle qui est non substitué ou substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle et hétéroaryle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸ où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸ où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- où n vaut 0, 1 ou 2, ou R³, R⁴ conjointement avec l'atome de carbone qui leur est pendant, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué;

R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène ;

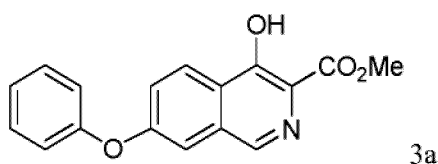
R⁷ est -OC(O)R¹² ;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène;

R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; et

chaque R¹² est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle et hétérocyclyle.

23. Composé qui est l'ester de méthyle d'acide 4-hydroxy-7-phénoxyisoquinoléine-3-carboxylique (3a) :



24. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1, 4 et 11, dans lequel R¹ est hydrogène.

25. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11, 12, 14 et 15, dans lequel R² est hydrogène ou alkyle.

26. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11 et 12, dans lequel

(i) R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸ ;
où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2;

chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène ; et

R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle;
 ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle,
 cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroa-
 ryle substitué; ou

(ii) R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle,
 hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸; où

X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹-;
 n vaut 0, 1 ou 2;
 R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué; et
 R⁹ est hydrogène, alkyle ou aryle;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, hétéro-
 cyclyle, aryle ou hétéroaryle; ou

(iii) R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X¹R⁸; où X¹ est oxygène,
 et R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué; ou

(iv) R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle
 substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰;

où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³-;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2;
 R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué; et
 R¹³ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; ou

(v) R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X²R¹⁰; où X² est oxygène,
 et R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué; ou

(vi) R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène; ou

(vii) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué,
 aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸,
 -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸, et -X¹R⁸;
 où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹-;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2;
 chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué,
 aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocy-
 clyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas
 hydrogène; et
 R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle,
 cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroa-
 ryle substitué; et

R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle
 substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰;

où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³-;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2;
 R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué; et
 R¹³ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle; ou

(viii) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle,
 hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸; où

X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;
 n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;
 R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et
 R⁹ est hydrogène, alkyle ou aryle ;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle ou hétéroaryle ; et
 R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X²R¹⁰ ; où X² est oxygène, et R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; ou

(ix) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle ;

R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X¹R⁸ ; où X¹ est oxygène, et R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et
 R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène.

27. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1, 2, 4, 5, 11 et 12, dans lequel

(i) R¹¹ est alkyle en C₁ à C₄ ; ou
 (ii) R¹¹ est méthyle.

28. Procédé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 4, 5, 8, 9, 11 et 12, dans lequel

(i) R¹² est alkyle en C₁ à C₄ ; ou
 (ii) R¹² est méthyle.

29. Procédé selon la revendication 7, dans lequel

(i) R¹ est hydrogène ; ou
 (ii) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle ; ou
 (iii) R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸ ;
 où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;
 chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène ; et
 R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué ; ou
 (iv) R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle, hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸ ; où

X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;
 n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;
 R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et
 R⁹ est hydrogène, alkyle ou aryle ;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle ou hétéroaryle ; ou

(v) R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X¹R⁸ ; où X¹ est oxygène, et R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; ou

(vi) R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ ;
 où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;

R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et

R¹³ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ; ou

5 (vii) R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X²R¹⁰ ; où X² est oxygène, et R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; ou

(viii) R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène ; ou

(ix) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle ;

10 R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, halogéno, hydroxy, cyano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸ ; où X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;

15 chaque R⁸ est indépendamment choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué, hétérocyclyle et hétérocyclyle substitué à condition que lorsque X¹ est -SO- ou -SO₂-, alors R⁸ ne soit pas hydrogène ; et

R⁹ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ;

20 ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, cycloalkyle substitué, hétérocyclyle, hétérocyclyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle ou hétéroaryle substitué ; et

25 R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, halogéno, alkyle, alkyle substitué, aryle, aryle substitué, hétéroaryle, hétéroaryle substitué et -X²R¹⁰ ; où X² est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR¹³- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;

R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et

30 R¹³ est choisi dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle et aryle ; ou

(x) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle ;

35 R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène, alkyle, aryle, hétéroaryle, hydroxy, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ et -X¹R⁸ ; où

X¹ est oxygène, -S(O)_n- ou -NR⁹- ;

n vaut 0, 1 ou 2 ;

R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et

40 R⁹ est hydrogène, alkyle ou aryle ;

ou R³ et R⁴ conjointement avec les atomes de carbone qui leur sont pendants, forment un cycloalkyle, hétérocyclyle, aryle ou hétéroaryle ; et

45 R⁵ et R⁶ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X²R¹⁰ ; où X² est oxygène, et R¹⁰ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; ou

(xi) R² est hydrogène ou alkyle ;

50 R³ et R⁴ sont indépendamment choisis dans le groupe consistant en hydrogène et -X¹R⁸ ; où X¹ est oxygène, et R⁸ est aryle ou aryle substitué ; et R⁵ et R⁶ sont hydrogène ; ou

(xii) R¹² est alkyle en C₁ à C₄ ; ou

(xiii) R¹² est méthyle.

55

REFERENCES CITED IN THE DESCRIPTION

This list of references cited by the applicant is for the reader's convenience only. It does not form part of the European patent document. Even though great care has been taken in compiling the references, errors or omissions cannot be excluded and the EPO disclaims all liability in this regard.

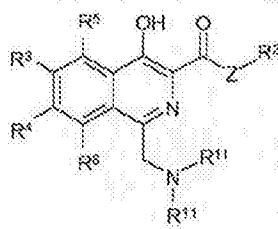
Patent documents cited in the description

- US 61672191 B [0001]
- US 6093730 A, Weidmann [0006]
- US 7629357 B [0007] [0009] [0094]
- US 7928120 B [0007]
- US 7323475 B [0095] [0166] [0197] [0214] [0215] [0216] [0313]
- US 20070004627 A [0313]
- US 20060276477 A [0313]
- US 20070259960 A [0313]
- US 4667016 A, Lai [0315]
- US 4558006 A, Egrie [0315]
- WO 2005118836 A [0322]

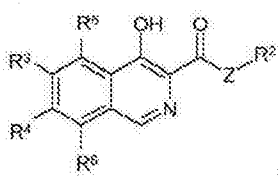
Non-patent literature cited in the description

- **ROBINSON et al.** *Gastroenterology*, 2008, vol. 134 (1), 145-155 [0003]
- **ROSENBERGER et al.** *Nephrol Dial Transplant*, 2008, vol. 23 (11), 3472-3478 [0003]
- **CASWELL et al.** *Heterocycl Chem*, 1966, (3), 328-332 [0004]
- **SUZUKI et al.** *Synthesis*, 1978, 461-462 [0005]
- Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences. Mack Publishing Co, 1990 [0018]
- Methods In Enzymology. Academic Press, Inc, [0018]
- Handbook of Experimental Immunology. Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1986, vol. I-IV [0018]
- Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1989, vol. I-III [0018]
- Short Protocols in Molecular Biology. John Wiley & Sons, 1999 [0018]
- Molecular Biology Techniques: An Intensive Laboratory Course. Academic Press, 1998 [0018]
- PCR (Introduction to Biotechniques Series). Springer Verlag, 1997 [0018]
- **BERGE et al.** *Journal of Pharmaceutical Science*, 1977, vol. 66, 1-19 [0077]
- **T. W. GREENE ; P. G. M. WUTS.** Protecting Groups in Organic Synthesis. Wiley, 1999 [0086]
- **T. W. GREENE ; G. M. WUTS.** Protecting Groups in Organic Synthesis. Wiley, 1999 [0097]
- **FIESER ; FIESER'S.** Reagents for Organic Synthesis. John Wiley, and Sons, 1991, vol. 1-15 [0099]
- Rodd's Chemistry of Carbon Compounds. Elsevier Science Publishers, 1989, vol. 1-5 [0099]
- Organic Reactions. John Wiley, and Sons, 1991, vol. 1-40 [0099]
- March's Advanced Organic Chemistry. John Wiley, and Sons, 2001 [0099]
- Larock's Comprehensive Organic Transformations. VCH Publishers Inc, 1989 [0099]
- **KIVIRIKKO ; MYLLYLÄ.** *Methods Enzymol.*, 1982, vol. 82, 245-304 [0322]

1. Eljárás (I) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomereinek keveréke előállítására,



amely eljárás során (II) képletű vegyületet



érintkeztetünk (III) képletű vegyülettel



az (I) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; ahol

Z jelentése O, NR¹ vagy S;

R¹ jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R² jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituátlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R³ és R⁴ jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁶)-R⁸, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ és -X¹R⁸ csoportjából van kiválasztva;

ahol X¹ jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR⁹-;

n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R⁸ jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X¹ jelentése -SO- vagy -SO₂-, akkor R⁸ jelentése nem hidrogén; és

R⁹ jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;

vagy R³ és R⁴ azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R⁵ és R⁶ jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és -X²R¹⁰ csoportjából van kiválasztva;

ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n$ - vagy $-NR^{13}$ -;

n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

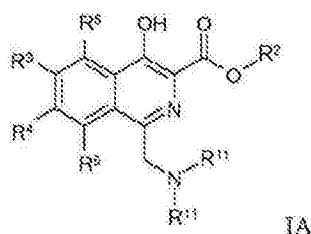
R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva; és

R^{13} jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;

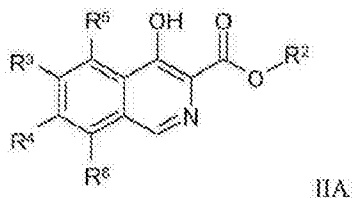
vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-NR^{13}$ -, akkor R^{10} és R^{13} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak; és

R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek.

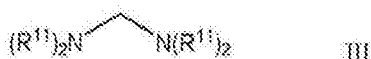
2. Az 1. igénypont szerinti eljárás (IA) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoisomere vagy sztereoisomerei keveréke előállítására,



amelynek során (IIA) képletű vegyületet



érintkezettünk (III) képletű vegyülettel



az (IA) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; ahol

R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituátlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^6)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^6C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n$ - vagy $-NR^9$ -, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

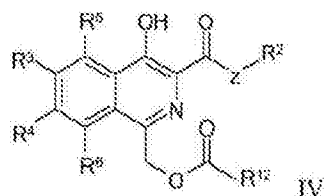
R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

- R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-NR^{13}-$, akkor R^{13} és R^{10} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;
- R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;
- R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;
- R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva; és
- R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek.

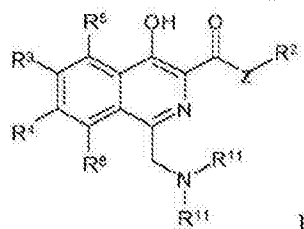
3. Az 1. vagy 2. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol

- (i) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak egy savat, például jégecetet; vagy
- (ii) a reakciót körülbelül 30°C -nál magasabb hőmérsékleten, például körülbelül 50°C - körülbelül 60°C hőmérsékleten végezzük; vagy
- (iii) R^{11} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil.

4. Eljárás (IV) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,

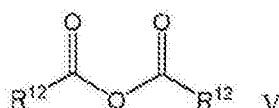


amelynek során (I) képletű vegyületet



érintkeztetünk $R^{12}-C(=O)-X^3$ képletű vegyülettel, majd $R^{12}-C(=O)-OH$ képletű vegyülettel;

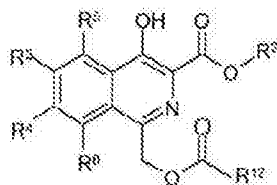
$R^{12}-X^3$ képletű vegyülettel, majd $R^{12}-C(=O)-OH$ képletű vegyülettel;
vagy (V) képletű vegyülettel



a (IV) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; ahol

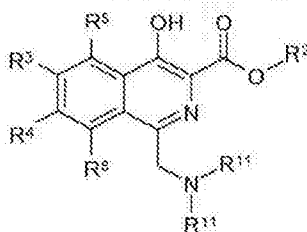
- Z jelentése O, NR¹ vagy S;
- R¹ jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva;
- R² jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;
- R³ és R⁴ jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁶)-R⁸, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, -NR⁵C(O)NR⁶R⁸ és -X¹R⁸, ahol X¹ jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR⁹-, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy
- R³ és R⁴ azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;
- R⁵ és R⁶ jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és -X²R¹⁰ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X² jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR¹³-, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X² jelentése -NR¹³-, akkor R¹³ és R¹⁰ azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;
- R⁸ jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X¹ jelentése -SO- vagy -SO₂-, akkor R⁸ jelentése nem hidrogén;
- R⁹ és R¹³ jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;
- R¹⁰ jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;
- R¹¹ jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R¹¹ azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek;
- R¹² jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva vagy amikor két R¹² van jelen, a két R¹² azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil csoportot képeznek; és
- X³ jelentése halogén.

5. A 4. igénypont szerinti eljárás (IVA) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,



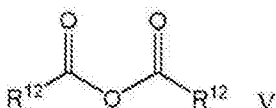
IVA

amelynek során (IA) képletű vegyületet



IA

érintkeztetünk (V) képletű vegyülettel



V

a (IVA) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; ahol

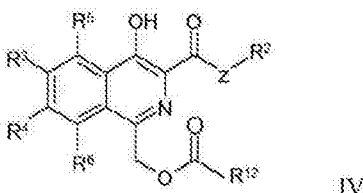
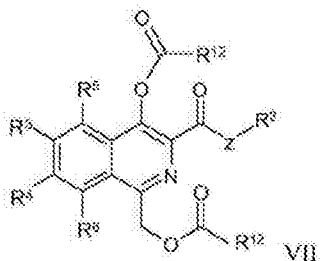
- R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;
- R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy
- R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;
- R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{11}-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-NR^{11}-$, akkor R^{11} és R^{10} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;
- R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;
- R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;
- R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

- R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és
- R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{12} szubsztituens azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil csoportot képeznek.

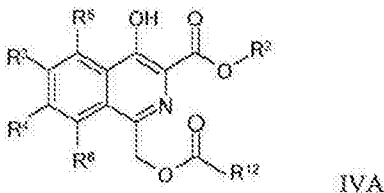
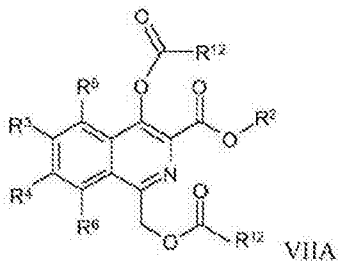
6. A 4. vagy 5. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol

- (i) a reakciókörülmények az (V) képletű vegyületet foglalják magukban; vagy
- (ii) a reakciót inert atmoszférában, például nitrogén atmoszférában végezzük; vagy
- (iii) a reakciókörülmények vízmentes reakciókörülmények; vagy
- (iv) a reakciót körülbelül 30°C-nál magasabb hőmérsékleten, például körülbelül 100°C hőmérsékleten végezzük; vagy
- (v) R^{11} és R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil, például metil; vagy
- (vi) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak egy (V) képletű vegyületet, ahol R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil; és ahol a reakciót körülbelül 100°C hőmérsékleten, adott esetben nitrogén atmoszférában végezzük.

7. A 4. vagy 5. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalják továbbá (VII) képletű vegyület (IV) képletű vegyületté történő átalakítását,



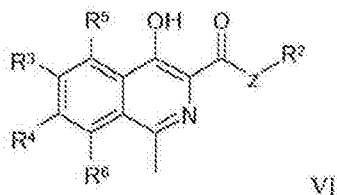
vagy (VIIA) képletű vegyület (IVA) képletű vegyületté történő átalakítását,



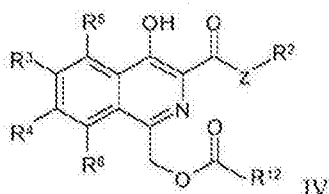
és adott esetben, ahol

- (i) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak egy amint, például morfolint; vagy
- (ii) a reakciót diklórmetánban végezzük; vagy
- (iii) a reakciót 25°C alatti hőmérsékleten, például körülbelül 0°C – körülbelül 10°C hőmérsékleten végezzük; vagy
- (iv) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak morfolint; és a reakciót diklórmetánban végezzük körülbelül 0°C - körülbelül 10°C hőmérsékleten.

8. Eljárás (VI) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomereinek keveréke előállítására,



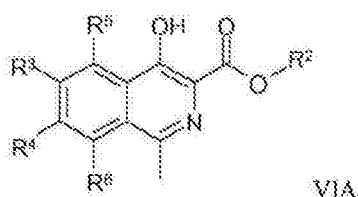
amelynek során (IV) képletű vegyületet



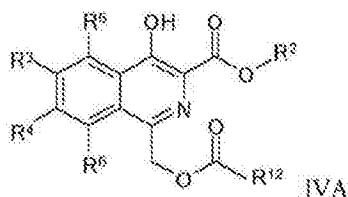
átalakítunk a (VI) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; ahol

- Z jelentése O, NR^1 vagy S;
- R^1 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva;
- R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituátlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;
- R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-\text{N}(\text{R}^8)-\text{R}^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-\text{NR}^5\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^6\text{R}^6$ és $-\text{X}^1\text{R}^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-$ vagy $-\text{NR}^9-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy
- R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;
- R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-\text{X}^2\text{R}^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-$ vagy $-\text{NR}^{11}-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-\text{NR}^{11}-$, akkor R^{11} és R^{10} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;
- R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-\text{SO}-$ vagy $-\text{SO}_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;
- R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; és
- R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva; és
- R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva.

9. A 8. igénypont szerinti eljárás (VIA) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,



amelynek során (IVA) képletű vegyületet



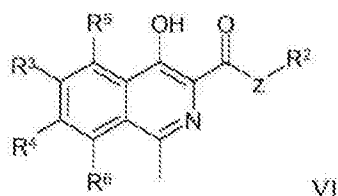
átalakítunk a (VIA) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; ahol

- R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;
- R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^6C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy
- R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;
- R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-NR^{13}-$, akkor R^{13} és R^{10} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;
- R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;
- R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; és
- R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva; és
- R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva.

10. A 8. vagy 9. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol

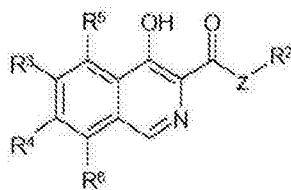
- (i) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak hidrogént; vagy
- (ii) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak egy bázist, például nátrium-karbonátot;
- (iii) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak etil-acetátot;
- (iv) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak egy katalizátort, például Pd/C-t; vagy
- (v) a reakciókörülmények nyomás alatti körülményeket, például körülbelül 60 psi nyomás alatti körülményt foglalnak magukban; vagy
- (vi) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak hidrogént, nátrium-karbonátot, etil-acetátot, Pd/C-t és nyomás alatti körülményeket; vagy
- (vii) a reakciókörülmények magukban foglalnak hidrogént, nátrium-karbonátot, etil-acetátot, Pd/C-t és körülbelül 60 psi nyomás alatti körülményeket;
- (viii) R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil, például metil.

11. Eljárás (VI) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,

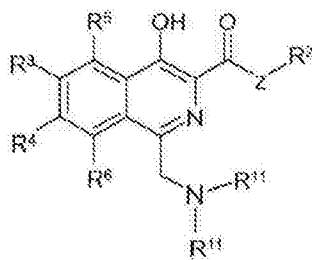


amely eljárás tartalmazza a következő lépéseket:

- a) (II) képletű vegyületet érintkeztetünk (III) képletű vegyülettel

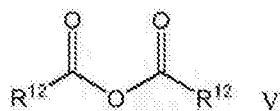


az (I) képletű vegyület előállítására megfelelő reakciókörülmények között

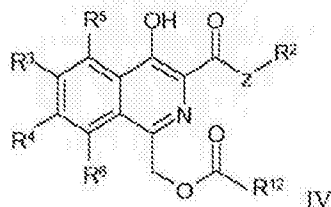


b) (I) képletű vegyületet érintkeztetünk $R^{12}-C(=O)-X^3$ képletű vegyülettel, majd $R^{12}-C(=O)OH$ képletű vegyülettel;

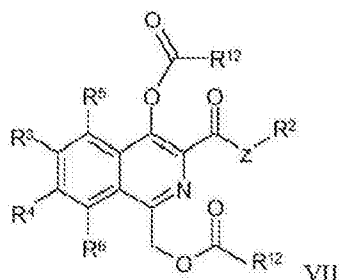
$R^{12}-X^3$ képletű vegyülettel, majd $R^{12}-C(=O)OH$ képletű vegyülettel; vagy
(V) képletű vegyülettel



a (IV) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



c) adott esetben (VII) képletű vegyületet



átalakítunk a (IV) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; és

d) (IV) képletű vegyületet átalakítunk a (VI) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;

ahol

Z jelentése O, NR¹ vagy S;

R¹ jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R² jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R³ és R⁴ jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ és -X¹R⁸, ahol X¹ jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR⁹-, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

R³ és R⁴ azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R⁵ és R⁶ jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és -X²R¹⁰ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X² jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR¹³-, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X² jelentése -NR¹³-, akkor R¹³ és R¹⁰ azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;

R⁸ jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril,

heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;

R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;

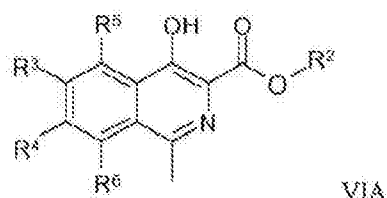
R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, vagy amikor két R^{12} van jelen, a két R^{12} azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil csoportot képeznek; és

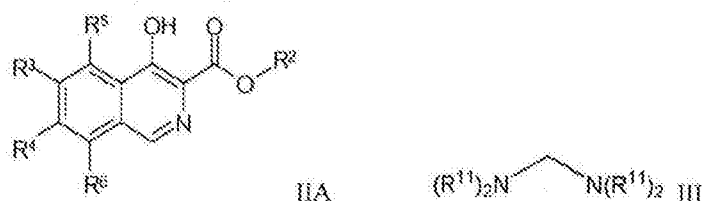
X^3 jelentése halogén.

12. A 11. igénypont szerinti eljárás (VIA) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,

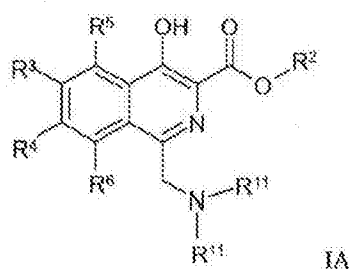


amely eljárás tartalmazza a következő lépéseket:

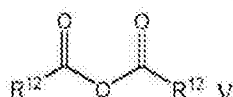
a) (IIA) képletű vegyület érintkeztetünk (III) képletű vegyülettel



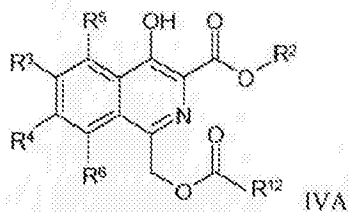
az (IA) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



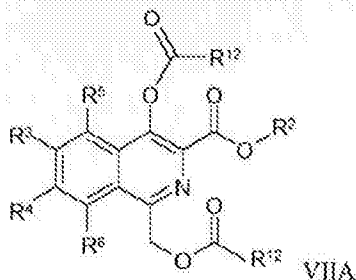
b) (IA) képletű vegyület érintkeztetünk (V) képletű vegyülettel



a (IVA) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



c) adott esetben (VIIA) képletű vegyületeket



átalakítunk a (IV A) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; és

d) (IV A) képletű vegyületet átalakítunk a (VIA) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;

ahol

R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^5)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^5C(O)NR^5R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^5-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-NR^{13}-$, akkor R^{13} és R^{10} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;

R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;

R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; és

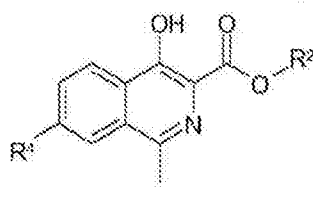
R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

- R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és
- R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{12} azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil csoportot képeznek.

13. A 11. vagy 12. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol

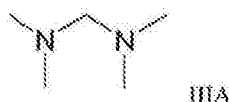
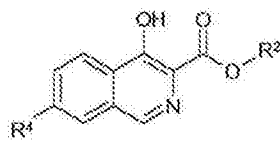
- (i) az a) és b) lépések reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak egy savat; vagy
- (ii) R^{11} és R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil; vagy
- (iii) R^{11} és R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil és R^3 , R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén; vagy
- (iv) R^{11} és R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil és R^4 , R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén; vagy
- (v) R^{11} és R^{12} jelentése metil.

14. A 11. igénypont szerinti eljárás (VIC) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,

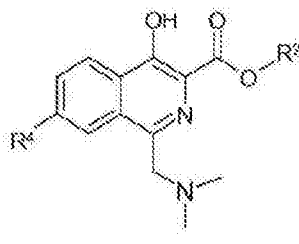


amely tartalmazza a következő lépéseket:

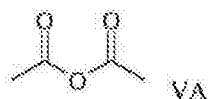
- a) (IIC) képletű vegyület érintkeztetünk (IIIA) képletű vegyülettel



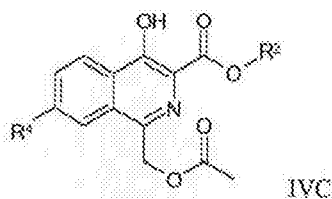
(IC) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



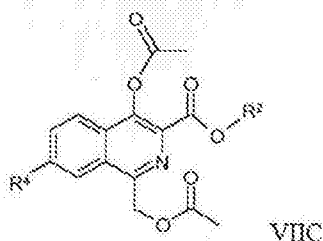
- b) (IC) képletű vegyületet érintkeztetünk (VA) képletű vegyülettel



(IVC) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



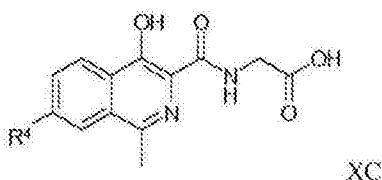
c) adott esetben (VIIC) képletű vegyületet



átalakítunk a (IVC) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; és

d) (IVC) képletű vegyületet átalakítunk a (VIC) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; és adott esetben

e) (VIC) képletű vegyületet érintkeztetünk glicinnel (XC) képletű vegyület



vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomer keveréke előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;

ahol

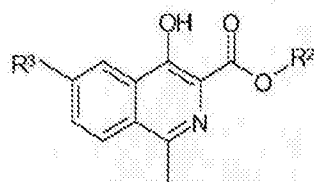
R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R^4 jelentése a következőket tartalmazó csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^8-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén; és

R^9 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva.

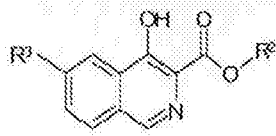
15. A 11. igénypont szerinti eljárás (VID) képletű vegyület vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállítására,



VID

amely tartalmazza a következő lépéseket:

a) (IID) képletű vegyületet érintkeztetünk (IIIA) képletű vegyülettel

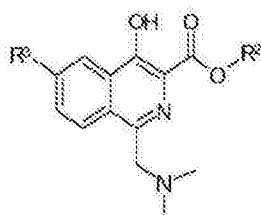


IID



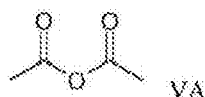
IIIA

(ID) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



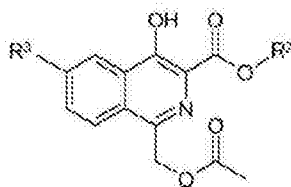
ID

b) (ID) képletű vegyületet érintkeztetünk (VA) képletű vegyülettel



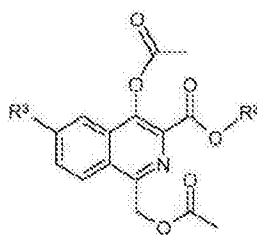
VA

(IVD) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;



IVD

c) adott esetben (VIID) képletű vegyületet

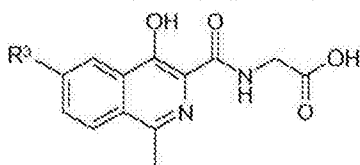


VIID

átalakítunk a (IVD) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; és

d) (IVD) képletű vegyületet átalakítunk a (VID) képletű vegyület előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között; és adott esetben

e) (VID) képletű vegyületet glicinnel érintkeztetünk (XD) képletű vegyület



XD

vagy ennek sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke előállításához megfelelő reakciókörülmények között;

ahol

- R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;
- R^3 jelentése a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy
- R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;
- R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén; és
- R^9 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén hidrogén, alkil és aril közül van kiválasztva.

16. A 14. vagy 15. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol

- (i) R^2 jelentése hidrogén és R^4 jelentése fenoxi; vagy
- (ii) R^2 jelentése hidrogén és R^4 jelentése 4-metoxifenoxi; vagy
- (iii) R^2 jelentése hidrogén és R^4 jelentése 3,5-difluorfenoxi.

17. A 11., 12. 14. vagy 15. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol

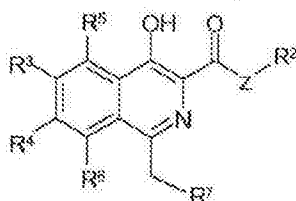
- (i) az a) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak egy savat, például jégecetet; vagy
- (ii) az a) lépést körülbelül 30°C-nál magasabb hőmérsékleten, például körülbelül 50°C - körülbelül 60°C hőmérsékleten végezzük; vagy
- (iii) a b) lépést körülbelül 30°C-nál magasabb hőmérsékleten, például körülbelül 100°C hőmérsékleten végezzük; vagy
- (iv) az eljárás magában foglalja a c) lépést; vagy
- (v) az eljárás magában foglalja a c) lépést, és a c) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak egy amint, például morfolint; vagy
- (vi) az eljárás magában foglalja a c) lépést, és a c) lépést diklórmétánban végezzük; vagy
- (vii) az eljárás magában foglalja a c) lépést, és a c) lépést körülbelül 25 °C alatti hőmérsékleten, például körülbelül 0 °C – körülbelül 10 °C hőmérsékleten végezzük; vagy
- (viii) a d) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak hidrogént; vagy
- (ix) a d) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak egy bázist, például nátrium-karbonátot; vagy
- (x) a d) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak körülbelül 0,5 – körülbelül 1 mólekiválens nátrium-karbonátot; vagy
- (xi) a d) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak etil-acetátot; vagy

(xii) a d) lépés reakciókörülményei magukban foglalnak egy katalizátort, például Pd/C-t.

18. Az 1., 2., 11. vagy 12. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol a (HIA) képletű vegyület körülbelül 1,1 – körülbelül 1,5 mólekiválensét használjuk, vagy a 14. vagy 15. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol a (HIA) képletű vegyület körülbelül 1,1 – körülbelül 1,5 mólekiválensét használjuk.

19. A 4., 5., 11. vagy 12. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol az (V) képletű vegyület körülbelül 2 – körülbelül 3 mólekiválensét használjuk, vagy a 14. vagy 15. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol a (VA) képletű vegyület körülbelül 2 – körülbelül 3 mólekiválensét használjuk.

20. (VIII) képletű vegyület,



VIII

ahol

Z jelentése O, NR¹ vagy S;

R¹ jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R² jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituátlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R³ és R⁴ jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, -S(O)_n-N(R⁸)-R⁸, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, -NR⁸C(O)NR⁸R⁸ és -X¹R⁸, ahol X¹ jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR⁹-, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

R³ és R⁴ azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R⁵ és R⁶ jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és -X²R¹⁰ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X² jelentése oxigén, -S(O)_n- vagy -NR¹³-, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X² jelentése -NR¹³-, akkor R¹³ és R¹⁰ azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;

R⁷ is either -N(R¹¹)(R¹¹) vagy -OC(O)R¹²;

R⁸ jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril,

heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;

R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

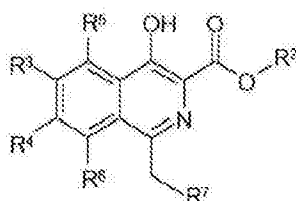
R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és

R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

vagy ennek sója, észtere, sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke;

azzal a megkötéssel, hogy a vegyület nem 1-dimetilaminometil-4-hidroxi-7-fenilszulfanilizokinolin-3-karbonsav-butil-észter.

21. A 20. igénypont szerinti (VIII A) képletű vegyület,



VIII A

ahol

R^2 jelentése hidrogén és alkil csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^6)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^5C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, alkoxi, szubsztituált alkoxi, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva, ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy amikor X^2 jelentése $-NR^{13}-$, akkor R^{13} és R^{10} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, heterociklil vagy szubsztituált heterociklil csoportot képezve összekapcsolódhatnak;

R^7 jelentése $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$ vagy $-OC(O)R^{12}$;

R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;

R^9 és R^{13} jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R^{10} jelentése alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, benzil és aril közül van kiválasztva, vagy két R^{11} azzal a nitrogénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, 4-8 tagú heterociklil vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és

R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva;

vagy ennek sója, észtere, sztereoizomere vagy sztereoizomerei keveréke;

azzal a megkötéssel, hogy a vegyület nem 1-dimetilaminometil-4-hidroxi-7-fenilszulfanilizokinolin-3-karbonsav-butil-észter.

22. A 20. vagy 21. igénypont szerinti vegyület, ahol

(i) R^2 jelentése szubsztituálatlan alkil; vagy

(ii) R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén; vagy

(iii) R^2 jelentése alkilcsoportok közül van kiválasztva, ahol az alkil szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva; és

R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén;

(iv) R^7 jelentése $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$ és R^{11} jelentése C_1-C_4 alkil; vagy

(v) R^7 jelentése $-OC(O)R^{12}$ és R^{12} jelentése C_1-C_4 alkil;

(vi) R^2 jelentése alkil, amely szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^5)-R^6$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^9C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén;

R^7 jelentése $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$;

R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválaszt-

va, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;

R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; és

R^{11} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül C_1-C_4 alkil és aril közül van kiválasztva; vagy

(vii) R^2 jelentése alkil, amely szubsztituálatlan vagy cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril és heteroaril csoportjából egymástól függetlenül kiválasztott egy vagy több szubsztituenssel van szubsztituálva;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül a következő csoportból van kiválasztva: hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$, ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^8-$, ahol n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2, vagy

R^3 és R^4 azzal a szénatommal együtt, amelyhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén;

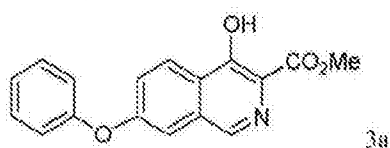
R^7 jelentése $-N(R^{11})(R^{11})$;

R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;

R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; és

R^{12} jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül alkil, aril, heteroaril és heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva.

23. Vegyület, amely a 4-hidroxi-7-fenoxizokinolin-3-karbonsav-metil-észter (3a)



24. Az 1., 4. vagy 11. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol R^1 jelentése hidrogén.

25. Az 1., 2., 4., 5., 8., 9., 11., 12., 14. vagy 15. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil.

26. Az 1., 2., 4., 5., 8., 9., 11. vagy 12. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol

(i) R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva,

- ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;
 R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;
vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek; vagy
- (ii) R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, aril, heteroaril, hidroxil, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol
 X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és
 R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil vagy aril;
vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; vagy
- (iii) R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol
 X^1 jelentése oxigén és R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; vagy
- (iv) R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva;
ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és
 R^{13} jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; vagy
- (v) R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén és R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; vagy
- (vi) R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén; vagy
- (vii) R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil;
- R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva;
ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválaszt-

va, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-\text{SO}-$ vagy $-\text{SO}_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén; és

R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;

vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek;

R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva;

ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-$ vagy $-\text{NR}^{13}-$;

n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és

R^{13} jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; vagy

(viii) R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, aril, heteroaril, hidroxil, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-\text{N}(\text{R}^6)-\text{R}^8$, $-\text{NR}^8\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^8\text{R}^8$ és $-X^1\text{R}^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol

X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_n-$ vagy $-\text{NR}^9-$;

n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és

R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil vagy aril;

vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és

R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol

X^2 jelentése oxigén és R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; vagy

(ix) R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^1\text{R}^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén és R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és

R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén.

27. Az 1., 2., 4., 5., 11. vagy 12. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol

(i) R^{11} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil; vagy

(ii) R^{11} jelentése metil.

28. A 4., 5., 8., 9., 11. vagy 12. igénypontok bármelyike szerinti eljárás, ahol

(i) R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil; vagy

(ii) R^{12} jelentése metil.

29. A 7. igénypont szerinti eljárás, ahol

(i) R^1 jelentése hidrogén; vagy

(ii) R^1 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil; vagy

- (iii) R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva;
 ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén;
 és
 R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva;
 vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek; vagy
- (iv) R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, aril, heteroaril, hidroxil, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol
 X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és
 R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil vagy aril;
 vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; vagy
- (v) R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén és R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; vagy
- (vi) R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva;
 ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;
 R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és
 R^{13} jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; vagy
- (vii) R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén és R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; vagy
- (viii) R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén; vagy
- (ix) R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil;
 R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, halogén, hidroxil, ciano, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva;
 ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;
 n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R^8 jelentése mindegyik előfordulási helyén egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril, heterociklil és szubsztituált heterociklil csoportjából van kiválasztva, azzal a megkötéssel, hogy amikor X^1 jelentése $-SO-$ vagy $-SO_2-$, akkor R^8 jelentése nem hidrogén; és

R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, szubsztituált cikloalkil, heterociklil, szubsztituált heterociklil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril vagy szubsztituált heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és

R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, halogén, alkil, szubsztituált alkil, aril, szubsztituált aril, heteroaril, szubsztituált heteroaril és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^{13}-$;

n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R^{13} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és

R^{13} jelentése hidrogén, alkil és aril csoportjából van kiválasztva; vagy

(x) R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén, alkil, aril, heteroaril, hidroxil, $-S(O)_n-N(R^8)-$, $-R^8$, $-NR^8C(O)NR^8R^8$ és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol

X^1 jelentése oxigén, $-S(O)_n-$ vagy $-NR^9-$;

n értéke 0, 1 vagy 2;

R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és

R^9 jelentése hidrogén, alkil vagy aril;

vagy R^3 és R^4 azokkal a szénatomokkal együtt, amelyekhez kapcsolódnak, cikloalkil, heterociklil, aril vagy heteroaril csoportot képeznek; és

R^5 és R^6 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^2R^{10}$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^2 jelentése oxigén és R^{10} jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; vagy

(xi) R^2 jelentése hidrogén vagy alkil;

R^3 és R^4 jelentése egymástól függetlenül hidrogén és $-X^1R^8$ csoportjából van kiválasztva; ahol X^1 jelentése oxigén és R^8 jelentése aril vagy szubsztituált aril; és

R^5 és R^6 jelentése hidrogén; vagy

(xii) R^{12} jelentése C_1 - C_4 alkil; vagy

(xiii) R^{12} jelentése metil.